# OASIS 🕅

# Solution Deployment Descriptor Specification Version 2.0

# **Committee Specification Draft 02**

# 16 May 2011

#### **Specification URIs:**

#### This version:

http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/sdd/v2.0/csd02/sdd-v2.0-csd02.doc (Authoritative) http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/sdd/v2.0/csd02/sdd-v2.0-csd02.html http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/sdd/v2.0/csd02/sdd-v2.0-csd02.pdf

#### **Previous version:**

http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/sdd/v2.0/csprd01/sdd-v2.0-csprd01.doc (Authoritative) http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/sdd/v2.0/csprd01/sdd-v2.0-csprd01.html http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/sdd/v2.0/csprd01/sdd-v2.0-csprd01.pdf

#### Latest version:

http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/sdd/v2.0/sdd-v2.0.doc (Authoritative) http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/sdd/v2.0/sdd-v2.0.html http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/sdd/v2.0/sdd-v2.0.pdf

#### **Technical Committee:**

OASIS Solution Deployment Descriptor (SDD) TC

#### Chair:

Brent A. Miller, IBM Corporation

#### Editor:

Merri Jensen, SAS Institute, Inc.

#### **Related work:**

This specification replaces or supercedes:

Solution Deployment Descriptor Specification 1.0 OASIS Standard

This specification is related to:

- Solution Deployment Descriptor (SDD) V2.0 Starter Profile Version 1.0
- Solution Deployment Descriptor (SDD) V2.0 Primer Version 1.0
- Solution Deployment Descriptor (SDD) V2.0 Examples Version 1.0
- XML schemas: sdd/v2.0/csd02/CL1Schema/ sdd/v2.0/csd02/FullSchema/

#### **Declared XML namespaces:**

sdd-common=http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/ns/common sdd-pd=http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/ns/packageDescriptor sdd-dd=http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/ns/deploymentDescriptor

#### Abstract:

This specification defines schema for two XML document types: *Package Descriptors* and *Deployment Descriptors*. Package Descriptors define characteristics of a package used to deploy a solution. Deployment Descriptors define characteristics of the content of a solution package,

including the requirements that are relevant for creation, configuration and maintenance of the solution content. The semantics of the descriptors are fully defined, allowing software implementations to precisely understand the intent of the descriptor authors and to use the information provided in the descriptors to support solution deployment.

#### Status:

This document was last revised or approved by the OASIS Solution Deployment Descriptor (SDD) TC on the above date. The level of approval is also listed above. Check the "Latest version" location noted above for possible later revisions of this document.

Technical Committee members should send comments on this specification to the Technical Committee's email list. Others should send comments to the Technical Committee by using the "Send A Comment" button on the Technical Committee's web page at http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/sdd/.

For information on whether any patents have been disclosed that may be essential to implementing this specification, and any offers of patent licensing terms, please refer to the Intellectual Property Rights section of the Technical Committee web page (http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/sdd/ipr.php).

#### **Citation format:**

When referencing this specification the following citation format should be used:

#### SDD2.0

Solution Deployment Descriptor Specification Version 2.0. 16 May 2011. OASIS Committee Specification Draft 02. http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/sdd/v2.0/csd02/sdd-v2.0-csd02.html.

# Notices

Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.

All capitalized terms in the following text have the meanings assigned to them in the OASIS Intellectual Property Rights Policy (the "OASIS IPR Policy"). The full Policy may be found at the OASIS website.

This document and translations of it may be copied and furnished to others, and derivative works that comment on or otherwise explain it or assist in its implementation may be prepared, copied, published, and distributed, in whole or in part, without restriction of any kind, provided that the above copyright notice and this section are included on all such copies and derivative works. However, this document itself may not be modified in any way, including by removing the copyright notice or references to OASIS, except as needed for the purpose of developing any document or deliverable produced by an OASIS Technical Committee (in which case the rules applicable to copyrights, as set forth in the OASIS IPR Policy, must be followed) or as required to translate it into languages other than English.

The limited permissions granted above are perpetual and will not be revoked by OASIS or its successors or assigns.

This document and the information contained herein is provided on an "AS IS" basis and OASIS DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY WARRANTY THAT THE USE OF THE INFORMATION HEREIN WILL NOT INFRINGE ANY OWNERSHIP RIGHTS OR ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

OASIS requests that any OASIS Party or any other party that believes it has patent claims that would necessarily be infringed by implementations of this OASIS Committee Specification or OASIS Standard, to notify OASIS TC Administrator and provide an indication of its willingness to grant patent licenses to such patent claims in a manner consistent with the IPR Mode of the OASIS Technical Committee that produced this specification.

OASIS invites any party to contact the OASIS TC Administrator if it is aware of a claim of ownership of any patent claims that would necessarily be infringed by implementations of this specification by a patent holder that is not willing to provide a license to such patent claims in a manner consistent with the IPR Mode of the OASIS Technical Committee that produced this specification. OASIS may include such claims on its website, but disclaims any obligation to do so.

OASIS takes no position regarding the validity or scope of any intellectual property or other rights that might be claimed to pertain to the implementation or use of the technology described in this document or the extent to which any license under such rights might or might not be available; neither does it represent that it has made any effort to identify any such rights. Information on OASIS' procedures with respect to rights in any document or deliverable produced by an OASIS Technical Committee can be found on the OASIS website. Copies of claims of rights made available for publication and any assurances of licenses to be made available, or the result of an attempt made to obtain a general license or permission for the use of such proprietary rights by implementers or users of this OASIS Committee Specification or OASIS Standard, can be obtained from the OASIS TC Administrator. OASIS makes no representation that any information or list of intellectual property rights will at any time be complete, or that any claims in such list are, in fact, Essential Claims.

The names "OASIS" and "SDD" are trademarks of OASIS, the owner and developer of this specification, and should be used only to refer to the organization and its official outputs. OASIS welcomes reference to, and implementation and use of, specifications, while reserving the right to enforce its marks against misleading uses. Please see http://www.oasis-open.org/who/trademark.php for above guidance.

# **Table of Contents**

Table of Contents	4
1 Introduction	9
1.1 Terminology	9
1.2 Purpose	
1.3 Scope	10
1.4 Audience	10
1.5 How to Read this Document	10
1.6 Motivation	10
1.7 Requirements	11
1.8 XML Namespaces	13
1.9 Notational Conventions	13
1.10 General Document Conventions	13
1.11 Diagram Conventions	13
1.12 Normative References	15
1.13 Non-Normative References	16
2 Solution Deployment Descriptor Overview	17
2.1 Package and Deployment Descriptors	17
2.2 Topology	17
2.3 Content and Artifacts	
2.4 Resulting and Changed Resources	18
2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies	18
2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies	19
2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies	19 19
<ul><li>2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies</li><li>2.6 Constraints</li></ul>	19 19 19
<ul> <li>2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies</li></ul>	19 19 19 20
<ul> <li>2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies</li></ul>	19 19 19 20 21
<ul> <li>2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies</li></ul>	19 19 20 21 21 21
<ul> <li>2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies.</li> <li>2.6 Constraints.</li> <li>2.7 Requirements .</li> <li>2.8 Conditions .</li> <li>2.9 Variables .</li> <li>3 Package Descriptor</li></ul>	19 19 20 21 21 21
<ul> <li>2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies</li></ul>	19 19 20 21 21 21 21 22 22
<ul> <li>2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies</li></ul>	19 19 20 21 21 21 21 22 22
<ul> <li>2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies</li></ul>	19 19 20 21 21 21 22 22 22 23 24
<ul> <li>2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies</li></ul>	19 19 20 21 21 21 22 22 22 23 24 25
<ul> <li>2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies</li></ul>	19 19 20 21 21 21 22 22 22 23 24 25
<ul> <li>2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies</li></ul>	19 19 20 21 21 21 22 22 22 23 24 25 25 26
<ul> <li>2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies.</li> <li>2.6 Constraints.</li> <li>2.7 Requirements</li> <li>2.8 Conditions</li> <li>2.9 Variables.</li> <li>3 Package Descriptor</li> <li>3.1 PackageDescriptor Property Summary.</li> <li>3.1.2 PackageDescriptor Property Usage Notes</li> <li>3.2 DescriptorInfoGroup</li> <li>3.2.1 DescriptorInfoGroup Property Usage Notes</li> <li>3.3 PackageIdentityType</li> <li>3.3.1 PackageIdentityType Property Summary.</li> <li>3.2 PackageIdentityType Property Usage Notes</li> <li>3.4 IdentityType Property Summary.</li> </ul>	19 19 20 21 21 21 22 22 23 24 25 25 26 27
<ul> <li>2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies</li></ul>	19 19 20 21 21 21 22 22 22 23 24 25 25 26 27 27
<ul> <li>2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies.</li> <li>2.6 Constraints.</li> <li>2.7 Requirements</li> <li>2.8 Conditions.</li> <li>2.9 Variables.</li> <li>3 Package Descriptor</li> <li>3.1 PackageDescriptor Property Summary.</li> <li>3.1.1 PackageDescriptor Property Usage Notes</li> <li>3.2 DescriptorInfoGroup</li> <li>3.2.1 DescriptorInfoGroup Property Usage Notes</li> <li>3.3 PackageIdentityType</li> <li>3.3.1 PackageIdentityType Property Summary.</li> <li>3.2 PackageIdentityType Property Usage Notes</li> <li>3.4 IdentityType</li> <li>3.4.1 IdentityType Property Summary.</li> <li>3.4.2 IdentityType Property Usage Notes</li> <li>3.5 MaintenanceInformationType</li> </ul>	19 19 20 21 21 21 22 22 23 24 25 25 26 27 27 28
<ul> <li>2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies.</li> <li>2.6 Constraints.</li> <li>2.7 Requirements</li> <li>2.8 Conditions</li> <li>2.9 Variables.</li> <li>3 Package Descriptor</li> <li>3.1 PackageDescriptor Property Summary.</li> <li>3.1.2 PackageDescriptor Property Usage Notes</li> <li>3.2 DescriptorInfoGroup</li> <li>3.2.1 DescriptorInfoGroup Property Usage Notes</li> <li>3.3 PackageIdentityType</li> <li>3.3.1 PackageIdentityType Property Summary.</li> <li>3.2 PackageIdentityType Property Usage Notes</li> <li>3.4 IdentityType</li> <li>3.4.1 IdentityType Property Summary.</li> <li>3.4.2 IdentityType Property Usage Notes</li> <li>3.5 MaintenanceInformationType</li> <li>3.5.1 MaintenanceInformationType Property Summary.</li> </ul>	19 19 20 21 21 21 22 22 22 23 24 25 26 27 27 28 28
<ul> <li>2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies.</li> <li>2.6 Constraints.</li> <li>2.7 Requirements</li> <li>2.8 Conditions</li> <li>2.9 Variables</li> <li>3 Package Descriptor</li> <li>3.1 PackageDescriptor Property Summary.</li> <li>3.1.2 PackageDescriptor Property Usage Notes</li> <li>3.2 DescriptorInfoGroup</li> <li>3.2.1 DescriptorInfoGroup Property Usage Notes</li> <li>3.3 PackageIdentityType</li> <li>3.3.1 PackageIdentityType Property Summary.</li> <li>3.4 IdentityType</li> <li>3.4.1 IdentityType Property Summary.</li> <li>3.4.1 IdentityType Property Summary.</li> <li>3.5.1 MaintenanceInformationType</li> <li>3.5.2 MaintenanceInformationType Property Usage Notes</li> </ul>	19 19 20 21 21 21 22 22 22 23 24 25 25 26 27 27 28 28 29
<ul> <li>2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies.</li> <li>2.6 Constraints.</li> <li>2.7 Requirements</li> <li>2.8 Conditions</li> <li>2.9 Variables.</li> <li>3 Package Descriptor</li> <li>3.1 PackageDescriptor Property Summary.</li> <li>3.1.2 PackageDescriptor Property Usage Notes</li> <li>3.2 DescriptorInfoGroup Property Usage Notes</li> <li>3.3 PackageIdentityType</li> <li>3.4 I dentityType Property Usage Notes</li> <li>3.4 IdentityType Property Summary.</li> <li>3.4 I dentityType Property Usage Notes</li> <li>3.5 MaintenanceInformationType</li> <li>3.5.1 MaintenanceInformationType Property Summary.</li> <li>3.6 FixIdentityType</li> </ul>	19 19 20 21 21 21 22 22 22 23 24 25 26 27 27 27 28 28 29 29
<ul> <li>2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies.</li> <li>2.6 Constraints.</li> <li>2.7 Requirements</li> <li>2.8 Conditions</li> <li>2.9 Variables</li> <li>3 Package Descriptor</li> <li>3.1 PackageDescriptor Property Summary.</li> <li>3.1.2 PackageDescriptor Property Usage Notes</li> <li>3.2 DescriptorInfoGroup</li> <li>3.2.1 DescriptorInfoGroup Property Usage Notes</li> <li>3.3 PackageIdentityType</li> <li>3.3.1 PackageIdentityType Property Summary.</li> <li>3.4 IdentityType</li> <li>3.4.1 IdentityType Property Summary.</li> <li>3.4.1 IdentityType Property Usage Notes</li> <li>3.5 MaintenanceInformationType</li> <li>3.5.1 MaintenanceInformationType Property Usage Notes</li> </ul>	19 19 20 21 21 21 22 22 22 22 23 24 25 26 27 27 28 28 29 29 29

	3.7 BuildInformationType	30
	3.7.1 BuildInformationType Property Summary	30
	3.7.2 BuildInformationType Property Usage Notes	30
	3.8 ManufacturerType	31
	3.8.1 ManufacturerType Property Summary	31
	3.8.2 ManufacturerType Property Usage Notes	31
	3.9 LocationType	31
	3.9.1 LocationType Property Summary	32
	3.9.2 LocationType Property Usage Notes	32
	3.10 VersionType	32
	3.11 ContentsType	32
	3.11.1 ContentsType Property Summary	32
	3.11.2 ContentsType Property Usage Notes	32
	3.12 ContentType	33
	3.12.1 ContentType Property Summary	33
	3.12.2 ContentType Property Usage Notes	34
	3.13 DigestInfoGroup	34
	3.13.1 DigestInfoGroup Property Usage Notes	35
4	Deployment Descriptor	36
	4.1 DeploymentDescriptor	36
	4.1.1 DeploymentDescriptor Property Summary	36
	4.1.2 DeploymentDescriptor Property Usage Notes	37
	4.2 Topology	38
	4.2.1 TopologyType	38
	4.2.2 ResourceType	40
	4.2.3 PropertyType	43
	4.2.4 ResultingPropertyType	44
	4.3 Atomic Content Elements	44
	4.3.1 InstallableUnitType	46
	4.3.2 ConfigurationUnitType	50
	4.3.3 ArtifactType	52
	4.3.4 InstallationArtifactsType	55
	4.3.5 ConfigurationArtifactsType	56
	4.3.6 OperationListType	56
	4.3.7 OperationType	56
	4.3.8 ArgumentListType	57
	4.3.9 ArgumentType	58
	4.3.10 OutputVariableListType	59
	4.3.11 OutputVariableType	
	4.3.12 AdditionalContentType	60
	4.3.13 SubstitutionType	61
	4.3.14 CompletionType	
	4.4 Constraints	63
	4.4.1 CapacityConstraintType	64
	4.4.2 CapacityValueType	65

4.4.3 ConsumptionConstraintType	66
4.4.4 ConsumptionConstraintValueType	68
4.4.5 PropertyConstraintType	69
4.4.6 PropertyValueListType	70
4.4.7 VersionConstraintType	70
4.4.8 VersionConstraintValueType	71
4.4.9 VersionValueType	72
4.4.10 VersionRangeType	72
4.4.11 MaxVersionType	73
4.4.12 UniquenessConstraintType	74
4.4.13 RelationshipConstraintType	75
4.4.14 AuthorizationConstraintType	76
4.5 Conditions	
4.5.1 ConditionType	77
4.5.2 AlternativeConditionalType	79
4.5.3 ConditionalResourceConstraintType	80
4.5.4 ConditionalPropertyConstraintType	82
4.6 Variables	
4.6.1 VariableExpressionType	83
4.6.2 ElementValueType	84
4.6.3 StringPatternType	84
4.6.4 BaseVariableType	85
4.6.5 VariablesType	
4.6.6 ParametersType	
4.6.7 BaseParameterType	88
4.6.8 IntegerParameterType	
4.6.9 BoundaryType	
4.6.10 StringParameterType	
4.6.11 StringCaseType	
4.6.12 BooleanParameterType	
4.6.13 URIParameterType	
4.6.14 ComplexParameterType	
4.6.15 ArrayParameterType	
4.6.16 IntegerDataType	
4.6.17 StringDataType	
4.6.18 ResourcePropertyType	
4.6.19 DerivedVariableType	
4.6.20 ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType	
4.7 Requirements	
4.7.1 RequirementsType	
4.7.2 RequirementType	
4.7.3 AlternativeRequirementType	
4.7.4 ResourceConstraintGroup	
4.7.5 RequirementResourceConstraintType	
4.7.6 InternalDependencyType	114

4.7.7 DependencyType	
4.7.8 RequiredBaseType	
4.7.9 RequiredBaseConstraintType	
4.7.10 AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType	
4.8 Resulting and Changed Resources	
4.8.1 ResultingResourceType	
4.8.2 ResultingChangeType	
4.8.3 RelationshipType	
4.9 Composite Content Elements	
4.9.1 CompositeInstallableType	
4.9.2 CompositeUnitType	
4.10 Aggregation	
4.10.1 ReferencedPackageType	
4.10.2 ResourceMapType	141
4.10.3 ResultingResourceMapType	
4.10.4 ResultingChangeMapType	
4.10.5 RequisitesType	145
4.11 Base Content	146
4.11.1 BaseContentType	146
4.12 Content Selectability	147
4.12.1 SelectableContentType	148
4.12.2 GroupsType	149
4.12.3 GroupType	150
4.12.4 FeaturesType	151
4.12.5 FeatureType	152
4.12.6 NestedFeatureType	
4.12.7 MultiplicityType	
4.12.8 FeatureReferenceType	158
4.12.9 ContentElementReferenceType	159
4.12.10 PackageFeatureReferenceType	159
4.12.11 ConstrainedResourceType	
4.12.12 MultiplicityConstraintType	161
4.12.13 RequiredContentSelectionType	
4.12.14 ContentSelectionFeatureType	
4.12.15 MultiSelectType	
4.13 Localization	
4.13.1 LocalizationContentType	
4.13.2 LocalizationUnitType	
4.13.3 CompositeLocalizationUnitType	
4.13.4 LanguageSelectionsType	
4.13.5 OptionalLanguagesType	
4.13.6 LanguagesType	
4.13.7 LanguageType	
4.13.8 LanguageSetType	
4.14 Display Information	

	4.14.1 DescriptionGroup	175
	4.14.2 DisplayElementGroup	176
	4.14.3 DisplayTextType	176
5	Conformance	177
	5.1 General Conformance Statements	177
	5.2 Conformance Levels	177
	5.2.1 CL Capabilities	177
	5.2.2 Conformance Level Differences	178
	5.3 Profiles	
	5.3.1 Profile Creation	
	5.3.2 Profile Publication	
	5.3.3 Profile Applicability	
	5.4 Compatibility Statements	
	5.5 Conformance Clause	
	5.5.1 Conformance for Users of This Specification	
	5.5.2 Conformance for This Specification Itself	
Α.	Schema and Non-Normative Resource File List	
В.	Changes from previous versions	
C.	Acknowledgements	

# 1 **1 Introduction**

2 The Solution Deployment Descriptor (SDD) specification defines a standard, in the form of a schema for

- 3 XML documents, called Solution Deployment Descriptors, or SDDs. SDDs define metadata that describes
- 4 the packaging and deployment characteristics of resources that are relevant for their lifecycle
- 5 management, including creation, configuration and maintenance.

# 6 1.1 Terminology

7 The following terms are used in this specification in a specialized sense that might differ from definitions8 elsewhere.

#### 9 Artifact

10

11

16

18

19

29

Zero or more files and/or metadata used to perform a *deployment lifecycle* operation on a *resource*.

#### 12 Deployment lifecycle

13The stages marking maturation of a *solution*: develop, package, integrate, manufacture, install,14configure, evaluate, deploy into production, upgrade and/or update, uninstall.

#### 15 Host Resource

A resource that provides the execution environment for another resource.

#### 17 Package

A set of artifacts used to perform *deployment lifecycle* operations on a group of related resources that make up a solution.

#### 20 Resource

A particular element of a computing environment, such as a computer system, an operating system, a Web server, a software application, or a complex *solution*.

#### 23 Solution

24 One or more interrelated *resources* on which *deployment lifecycle* operations can be performed.

#### 25 Target Resource

A resource that processes *artifacts* to perform *deployment lifecycle* operations on another resource. The *host resource* often serves as the target resource.

#### 28 Topology

The physical or logical layout of a solution's resources.

#### 30 Update (n.)

- 31 A *package* that replaces a limited set of the *resources* in a *solution* instance. An update does not 32 require migration.
- 33 Upgrade (n.)
- A *package* that replaces all, or a significant portion of, the *resources* used in a *solution*. An upgrade might or might not require migration.

#### 36 **1.2 Purpose**

37 The purpose of this document is to provide the normative specification of the SDD, including concepts,

38 structure, syntax, semantics and usage.

#### 39 **1.3 Scope**

40 This document is the specification for the SDD. It consists of both normative and non-normative prose,

- diagrams, schema and examples. The document is intended to facilitate an understanding of the SDD
- 42 concepts, structure, syntax, semantics and usage. This document is not intended to be a tutorial.
- 43 This document is the full SDD specification, but it also is augmented with other documents produced by
- the SDD TC, including the SDD XML Schema and Examples (see Appendix [A]), [SDDP], [SDDSP] and
- 45 the set of SDD profiles (see section [5.3]), as well as documents produced by others (see section [5.3.1]).

#### 46 **1.4 Audience**

47 This document is intended to assist those who require an understanding of the nature and details of the

48 SDD. This includes architects, developers, solution integrators and service/support personnel who

49 generate, consume, or otherwise use SDDs, as well as those who develop tooling and applications for

50 constructing and deploying SDDs.

# 51 **1.5 How to Read this Document**

52 The various audiences of this specification might have different objectives and purposes when reading 53 the document. You might wish to generally understand the SDD, or learn the details of the SDD to create 54 or consume SDDs, or use the document as a reference.

- If your purpose is to understand the major capabilities and characteristics of the SDD and how they fit together, start by reading the Introductions to the major sections: [3], [4] and [4.1]–[4.14].
- If your purpose is to understand the major elements of the SDD and how they work together to
   accomplish the goals of this specification, read in addition to the above, the introductions to each of
   the type sections [3.1]–[3.13] and the type subsections within sections [4.2]–[4.14].
- If your purpose is to understand the syntax of the SDD, look at the tables in each of the Property
   Summary sections.
- If your purpose is to understand the semantics of the elements and attributes of the SDD, read the
   Property Usage Notes sections.
- If your purpose is to understand only the package descriptor, subset the above suggestions to focus
   on the sub-sections within section [3].
- If your purpose is to understand only the deployment descriptor, subset the above suggestions to focus on the sub-sections within section [4].

# 68 **1.6 Motivation**

The motivation for producing this specification is best expressed in this excerpt from the SDD Technical Committee's charter:

71 Deployment and lifecycle management of a set of interrelated software, hereinafter referred to as 72 a solution, is a predominantly manual operation because there is currently no standardized way 73 to express installation packaging for a multi-platform environment. Each hosting platform or 74 operating system has its own format for expressing packaging of a single installable unit but, 75 even on these homogeneous platforms, there is no standardized way to combine packages into a 76 single aggregated unit without significant re-creation of the dependency and installation instructions. The problem is compounded when the solution is to be deployed across multiple, 77 78 heterogeneous, platforms. A standard for describing the packaging and mechanism to express 79 dependencies and various lifecycle management operations within the package would alleviate 80 these problems and subsequently enable automation of these highly manual and error-prone 81 tasks.

The purpose of this Technical Committee is to define XML schema to describe the characteristics
of an installable unit (IU) of software that are relevant for core aspects of its deployment,
configuration and maintenance. This document will be referred to as the Solution Deployment
Descriptor (SDD).

86 SDDs will benefit member companies and the industry in general by providing a consistent model and semantics to address the needs of all aspects of the IT industry dealing with software 88 deployment, configuration and lifecycle management. The benefits of this work include:

- ability to describe software solution packages for both single and multi-platform heterogeneous environments.
- ability to describe software solution packages independent of the software installation • technology or supplier.
- 93 ability to provide information necessary to permit full lifecycle maintenance of software • 94 solutions.

#### **1.7 Requirements** 95

87

89

90 91

92

96 A summary of requirements satisfied by this SDD specification follows. Detailed requirements that support 97 approved use cases are available at the SDD TC Web page, http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/sdd.

#### 98 Solution lifecycle management

- 99 The SDD must provide information to support the complete lifecycle of a software solution.
- 100 Certain key requirements are applicable to all phases of deployment lifecycle operation: planning, 101 installation, configuration, maintenance, upgrade, migration and uninstallation.

#### 102 Solution requirements for environment to perform lifecycle

#### management tasks 103

104 A deployment lifecycle operation on a target resource is often dependent on a certain set of conditions that must exist on the target. This set of pre-existing conditions is known as the 105 106 environment. If successful deployment lifecycle operations are dependent on a certain set of pre-107 existing conditions (environment), then the SDD specification must support the ability to specify the required environment. 108

#### 109 Projected changes to environment

110 The SDD specification must support the definition of environment changes that become effective once the lifecycle operation is complete. 111

#### 112 Solution instance variability

- 113 The SDD specification must support the definition of the appropriate information for a runtime to 114 vary the ways in which the solution can be deployed. This information is also needed to enable an 115 integrator to control the variability according to the needs of their higher-level solution.
- This variability includes the information to control (1) the subset of capability that can be 116 117 deployed; (2) setting the initial configuration of the solution; and (3) varying the topology in which 118 the solution can be deployed.

#### 119 Solution composition

120 The SDD specification must support the ability for the author to compose solution packages from 121 multiple components, products, or solutions.

#### 122 Solution and packaging identity

123 The SDD specification must support the definition of identity information for the solution package, 124 resources that make up the solution, and solution itself to support use cases including asset 125 management, license management, support/update entitlement, component reuse during 126 development, reports and queries from a package repository, identifying associated 127 documentation, solution lifecycle management, traceability to build/development environment and problem management systems, correlation into the hosting environment, component reuse, and 128 maintenance history. Also, the SDD specification must support the definition of the identity 129 description information used by a runtime to assist a user in making correct decisions about 130 solution installation. The SDD specification must support the definition of the information that 131 uniquely identifies the SDD descriptor and the ability to identify the version of the SDD. The 132 customer should be able to identify the solution packages with consistent names. 133

#### 134 **Physical packaging**

Physical packaging information should be contained in a separate media descriptor. The
 deployment model for a solution should be decoupled from the details of physical packaging. The
 format and structure of the physical packaging is outside the scope of SDD v1.0-v2.0.

#### 138 Interoperability with existing software packaging technologies

The SDD specification must support the ability for the author to compose solutions from existing
software packages that do not have an SDD. This means that the SDD should be able to
describe existing software packages.

#### 142 **Conform to external standards**

143The SDD specification must provide for alternative descriptive text to be defined for any images,144animations, or audio information contained in the descriptor.

#### 145 **Decision support**

Requirements to perform lifecycle management operations within various target environments
may not be satisfied in the target's current state but might be able to be satisfied with additional
operations. For example, successful deployment of a set of Java<sup>™1</sup> components is dependent on
the existence of a Java runtime environment that is not included with the solution. The SDD
should have the ability to specify information that will assist lifecycle management tools in
planning for, accessing and installing these external requirements.

#### 152 Specification organization

153 The SDD specification must provide the semantic behavior expected by producers and 154 consumers of SDDs. This information allows for the producers to ensure that the consumers of 155 their SDDs will provide the support intended.

#### 156 Solution metadata

157 The SDD metadata may not encompass all of the information about the solution in all contexts in 158 which the solution can be deployed. Additional metadata that is outside of the scope of the SDD 159 is available at the SDD TC Web page, http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/sdd.

#### 160 Globalization

For all content in the SDD that would be displayed to a user, the specification must support the definition of strings for multiple locales; for example, this content must be localizable.

#### 163 Align with other standards bodies

164 Satisfying all the requirements listed here calls for extensive standardization in specific areas. 165 The requirements should thus be aligned with other appropriate standards bodies. The SDD

166 reuses existing OASIS and other standards where appropriate and aligns with other standards 167 bodies (for example, **[OGF-ACS]**) that are developing standards in the same domain as SDD.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Java is a trademark or registered trademark of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

#### 168 **1.8 XML Namespaces**

- 169 The XML namespaces defined as part of this specification are:
- **sdd-pd**: stands for the package descriptor portion of the SDD namespace.
- **sdd-dd**: stands for the deployment descriptor portion of the SDD namespace.
- **sdd-common**: stands for the common (shared) types, elements and groups of the SDD namespace.
- For XML namespaces not defined as part of this specification, conventional XML namespace prefixes are used as follows, regardless of whether a namespace declaration is present in the example:
- 175 The prefix xsd: stands for the W3C XML Schema namespace [XSD].
- 176 The prefix ds: stands for the digital signature namespace [XMLDSIG-CORE].

# 177 **1.9 Notational Conventions**

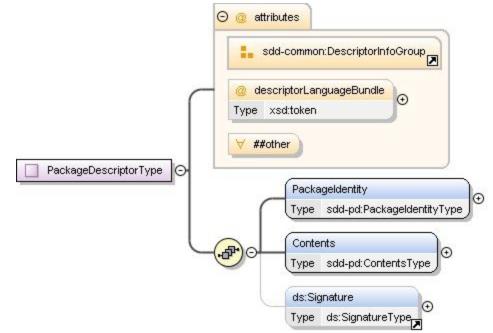
- Everything in the specification, including the Appendices, is considered normative except for the abstract,examples and any sections or other material marked as non-normative.
- 180 The keywords "MUST", "MUST NOT", "REQUIRED", "SHALL", "SHALL NOT", "SHOULD", "SHOULD
- 181 NOT", "RECOMMENDED", "MAY" and "OPTIONAL" in this document are to be interpreted as described 182 in **[RFC2119]**.
- 183 These keywords are capitalized when used unambiguously to specify requirements or application
- 184 features and behavior. When these words are not capitalized, they are meant in their natural-language 185 sense.

# 186 **1.10 General Document Conventions**

- 187 In describing XML elements and attributes of the SDD schema, this document contains many cross-
- 188 references. Such references appear as the referenced section number inside square brackets, for
- example, [4.5]. In electronic versions of this specification, the cross-references can act as links the targetsection.
- 191 The following property naming convention is used in the schema: Element and type names begin with an 192 uppercase letter and attribute names begin with a lowercase letter.
- 193 Italics are used to identify element and attribute names, type names and enumerated values defined byan SDD type.
- 195 In describing the XML schema, each section typically contains the following subsections:
- 196 A diagram illustrating the element, group, or type that is specified in the section.
- Property Summary: A table listing the schema elements and attributes, along with the data type, cardinality and description for each one.
- 199 When specified, extension points are listed in the tables with no name and a type of xsd:any for 200 element extensions and xsd:anyAttribute for attribute extensions. Cardinality is also provided.
- When a type is an extension of another type, the extended type is listed in the table with no name and prefixed with **[extends]**. The extended type's properties can be referenced from the appropriate section listed in the description column.
- When the schema specifies a default or fixed attribute value, that value is prefixed with two asterisks, as in **\*\*default value="true"**.
- Property Usage Notes: A list of the elements and attributes, along with more detailed prose
   descriptions of the properties and how they fit into the schema as a whole.
- 208 Not all sections contain every one of the preceding subsections.

# 209 **1.11 Diagram Conventions**

210 Sections 3 and 4 of this specification contain diagrams that illustrate the structure of elements, data types 211 and groups used throughout the SDD schema. Figure 1 is an example of this type of diagram.



212

#### 213 **Figure 1: Sample XML structure diagram.**

- 214 Elements are represented with the element name in a blue shaded rectangle with four rounded corners.
- 215 In Figure 1, the elements are *PackageIdentity*, *Contents*, and *ds:Signature*.
- 216 Attributes are represented within a yellow shaded tab and are individually contained in yellow shaded
- rectangles with two square corners on the left side and two rounded corners on the right side, and the attribute name is preceeded by a "@" symbol.



219

225

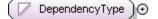
- For both elements and attributes, a solid black outline around the rectangle indicates that the element or attribute is required by the schema; whereas a grey outline indicates that the element or attribute is
- 222 optional.
- References to elements or attributes defined in a separate namespace are represented by a small arrow in the lower right corner of the rectangle:



226 Complex types are represented by a purple shaded rectangle with four squared corners and with a purple 227 square followed by the element name:

ArtifactType 🕣

- 228
- Simple types are represented by a purple shaded rectangle with all the corners truncated and with apurple triangle followed by the element name:



- 231 232
  - A purple shaded tab represents an element type that is extended by the element shown in the figure.

- 233 Groups are represented by a rectangle with three squared corners and a rounded upper right corner and
- with three small squares followed by the group name. Element groups are shaded blue and attribute
- 235 groups are shaded yellow.

L DisplayElementGroup )⊙

A plus sign on the right border of a component indicates hidden child elements or attributes. When hidden, the child elements are usually described in a separate section.

- 239 There are two connectors (or compositors) used in the SDD schema diagrams to combine elements:
- A sequence of elements is indicated by the following symbol:



- A choice among elements is indicated by the following symbol:
- 242 Where appropriate, the cardinality of an element is indicated by a rectangle with the cardinality listed to 243 the left, using the form "*min..max*". For example, "1.. $\infty$ " indicates a minimum of one occurrence of the 244 element and an unbounded upper limit:



245

248

236

- When cardinality is present to the left of a connector, the sequence or choice that follows is constrained and may have restrictions on the number of times it may be repeated within the element.
  - <u>1..∞</u>())⊖
- All XSD schema figures were created with <oXygen/> XML Editor, v10.2.

# 250 **1.12 Normative References**

251	[CL2_Schema]	Solution Deployment Descriptor Schema
252		See Appendix [A] for location.
253	[CONFORM]	OASIS, OASIS Conformance Requirements for Specifications 1.0,
254		http://www.oasis-
255		open.org/committees/download.php/305/conformance_requirements-v1.pdf.
256	[IANA-CHARSET]	Internet Assigned Numbers Authority, Character Sets,
257		http://www.iana.org/assignments/character-sets, modified December 2006.
258	[IETF-UUID]	Internet Engineering Task Force Draft Specification,
259		http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc4122.txt.
260	[ISO639.2]	Library of Congress, Codes for the Representation of Names of Languages,
261		http://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/englangn.html.
262	[ISO3166]	International Organization for Standardization, English Country Names and Code
263		<i>Elements</i> , http://www.iso.ch/iso/en/prods-services/iso3166ma/02iso-3166-code-
264		lists/list-en1.html.
265	[RFC2119]	S. Bradner, Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels,
266		http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2119.txt, IETF RFC 2119, March 1997.
267	[RFC3066]	H. Alvestrand, ed. RFC 3066: Tags for the Identification of Languages 1995,
268		http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3066.txt.
269	[UNIT]	Bureau International des Poids et Mesures, http://www.bipm.fr.
270	[XMLDSIG-CORE]	Bartel et al., XML-Signature Syntax and Processing,
271		http://www.w3.org/TR/xmldsig-core/, W3C Recommendation, February 2002.
272	[XSD]	W3C Schema Working Group, XML Schema, http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-
273		1/, W3C Recommendation, October 2004.
274		

# 275 **1.13 Non-Normative References**

276	[CL1_Schema]	Solution Deployment Descriptor Conformance Level 1 Schema
277		See Appendix [A] for location.
278 279	[CIM]	Distributed Management Task Force, Inc., Common Information Model (CIM) http://www.dmtf.org/standards/cim/.
280	[OGF-ACS]	Open Grid Forum, Application Contents Service WG (ACS-WG),
281		http://www.ogf.org/gf/group_info/view.php?group=acs-wg.
282	[SDDEX]	Solution Deployment Descriptor Examples
283		See Appendix [A] for location.
284	[SDDP]	Solution Deployment Descriptor Primer
285		See Appendix [A] for location.
286	[SDDSP]	Solution Deployment Descriptor Starter Profile
287		See Appendix [A] for location.
288		

# 289 **2 Solution Deployment Descriptor Overview**

# 290 2.1 Package and Deployment Descriptors

The package descriptor defines package content which includes artifacts whose processing results in deployment of the software package. The deployment descriptor defines metadata associated with those artifacts. The SDD package descriptor defines the package identity, the package content and various other attributes of the package. Each SDD consists of exactly one deployment descriptor and one package descriptor. The deployment descriptor is where the topology, selectability, inputs, requirements and conditions of the deployment are described.

# 297 **2.2 Topology**

The SDD's topology describes all the resources that may be required, created or modified when any of the deployment operations supported by the SDD are performed.

- 300 Primary identifying characteristics of the resources can be defined in topology. The topology includes
- 301 identification of hosts-hosted by relationships between resources. It is usual that only a subset of the
- 302 resources described in topology will play a role in any particular deployment. This is determined by the
- 303 selection of content elements for the particular deployment. The resources that are required, created or
- 304 modified by the content elements in scope for the deployment are the ones that will participate in the
- 305 deployment and so will be associated with resources in the deployment environment.
- 306 At deployment time, definitions of the resources that participate in that particular deployment are
- 307 associated with actual resource instances in the deployment environment. The mechanism for
- 308 associating resource definitions with resource instances is not defined by the SDD.
- The only resource definitions in the SDD are in topology. All other mention of resources in the SDD arereferences to the resource definitions in the topology.

# 311 2.3 Content and Artifacts

- 312 Metadata throughout the deployment descriptor is associated with package content in the definition of
- 313 atomic content elements. The atomic content elements are InstallableUnit, ConfigurationUnit and
- 314 *LocalizationUnit*. These are the only content elements that define *Artifacts* elements.
- 315 Artifact elements identify an artifact file or set of files defined in package content whose processing will 316 perform all or a portion of the deployment for a particular deployment lifecycle operation. Artifact elements
- define the inputs and outputs, substitution values and types associated with the artifact files. The content
- 318 element's target resource, identified by *targetResourceRef*, processes the artifact files with the defined
- 319 inputs to perform deployment operations. Examples of artifact types include zip files, rpm files and
- 320 executable install files. Artifact types are not defined by this specification. The artifact types defined in the
- 321 SDD need to be understood by software that processes the SDD. *Profiles* are used to communicate the
- 322 artifact types that an implementation is capable of processing [5.3].
- 323 Composite content elements organize the content of an SDD but do not define artifacts used to deploy
- 324 SDD content. There are three types of composite content elements: *CompositeInstallable*, *CompositeUnit* 325 and *CompositeLocalizationUnit*.
- 326 *CompositeInstallable* is used any time that more than one content element is defined in support of one
- 327 operation on the package; any time aggregation of SDDs is needed; or any time the package includes
- 328 selectable content. *CompositeInstallable* is the root of a content hierarchy that supports a single
- deployment lifecycle operation. It can define a base content hierarchy, a localization content hierarchy
- and a selectable content hierarchy that includes selection criteria. One SDD can have more than one
- 331 *CompositeInstallable*–each supporting a different operation.
- 332 *CompositeUnit* is used to organize content elements within the base or selectable content hierarchies.
- 333 CompositeUnits can define InstallableUnits, ConfigurationUnits, ContainedPackages and other

- 334 *CompositeUnits*. Requirements, conditions and variables that are common to all content elements defined
- by the *CompositeUnit* can be defined in the *CompositeUnit* to avoid repetition. Within the selectable
- 336 content hierarchy, a *CompositeUnit* can provide an efficient means for selection of a set of related content
- 337 elements by a *feature*.
- 338 *CompositeLocalizationUnit* serves the same purposes as *CompositeUnit* within the *LocalizatonContent* 339 hierarchy.
- 340 SDD packages can aggregate other SDD packages. Metadata about the aggregation is defined in
- 341 ContainedPackage, ContainedLocalizationPackage and Requisite elements. ContainedPackage
- 342 elements are a content element that can be defined anywhere in the base and selectable content
- hierarchies. *ContainedLocalizationPackages* are content elements that can be defined in the localization
- content hierarchy. *Requisites* are packages that can be deployed, if necessary, to satisfy requirements in
   the aggregating SDD. They are not content of the SDD package. The type of all three of these elements
- is *ReferencedPackageType*. The term "referenced package" is used in this specification when referring to
- these elements as a group. The term "referenced SDD" is used when referring to any aggregated SDD.
- 348 Each referenced package element can further constrain the deployment of the referenced SDD by
- 349 defining additional requirements; by mapping resources defined in the aggregating SDD to those defined
- in the referenced SDD; and by determining feature selections for deployment of the referenced SDD.

#### 351 2.4 Resulting and Changed Resources

- 352 Deployment of an SDD package creates or modifies software resources. These resources are included in
   353 the topology definition and described in more detail in *ResultingResource* and *ResultingChange* 354 elements.
- The SDD author can choose to model resulting and modified resources at a very granular level, at a very coarse level; at any level in between, or not at all. An example of modeling resulting resources at a
- 357 granular level would be modeling every file created by the deployment as a resulting resource. An
- example of modeling resulting resources at a very coarse level would be modeling the software product
- 359 created by deployment as a single resulting resource. The choice depends on the needs of the solution 360 deployment. If a resource is not modeled in the SDD, no requirements can be expressed on it, no
- 361 conditions can be based on it and no variables can be set from values of its properties. It cannot play any
- 362 of the roles described for resources in the *ResourceType* section of this document [4.2.2].

# 363 **2.5 Base, Selectable and Localization Content Hierarchies**

- Each *CompositeInstallable* element can define three types of content hierarchies. Base content is the default content for the deployment lifecycle operation associated with the *CompositeInstallable*. This is content that will be deployed whenever the associated operation is performed on the SDD package. Base content may be conditioned on characteristics of the deployment environment but it is not selectable by the deployer.
- 369 The SDD author can define selectable subsets of optional content in the selectable content hierarchy.
- 370 The selection criteria include features and groups of features that select content from the selectable
- 371 content hierarchy. Selectability, as used in the SDD, is a characteristic of the deployment lifecycle
- operation and the package. For example, the decision to provide selectability for one operation in one
- package has no semantic relationship to the selectability provided in another package related to the same
- software. It also has no semantic relationship to the selectability provided for a different operation withinthe same package.
- 376 Localization content is the third type of content hierarchy. Localization refers to enabling a particular piece
- of software for support for one or more languages. Anything that needs to be deployed to provide support
- 378 for a particular language in that software is considered localization content. Translated materials are a
- 379 primary, but not the only, example of localization content.
- 380 Localization content is similar in many ways to other content, but there are important differences in how
- 381 localization content is selected for deployment that lead to the need for a separate content hierarchy and
- 382 separate types. There are two criteria for determining that localization content is in scope for a particular
- 383 deployment.

- The first criterion has to do with the language or languages supported by the localization content. At
   least one of the languages must be in scope for the content to be selected.
- The second criterion has to do with the availability of the resources to be localized-the localization
   base. The localization base may be a resource deployed by base or selectable content, or it may be
   a resource previously deployed and found in the deployment environment.

# 389 **2.6 Constraints**

- 390 The SDD author needs to communicate constraints on resources for a variety of purposes.
- Some constraints must be met for the requirements of a content element to be met.
- Other constraints must be met for a resource to serve as the required base for an update.
- Still others must be met to satisfy a condition that determines the applicability of a content element or
   completion action.
- 395 The Constraint types are:
- 396 CapacityConstraint
- 397 ConsumptionConstraint
- 398 PropertyConstraint
- 399 VersionConstraint
- 400 UniquenessConstraint
- 401 RelationshipConstraint
- 402 AuthorizationConstraint

# 403 2.7 Requirements

A Requirement is an environmental necessity that a resource must have fulfilled in order for an artifact to be deployed successfully into that environment. Requirements are defined by content elements. A requirement consists of resource constraints that the SDD author states MUST be met prior to successful deployment or use of the software described by the SDD package. Each requirement definition lists one or more deployment lifecycle operations to which the requirement applies. When the requirement is specified in an atomic content element, the operation associates the requirement with artifacts within the atomic content element.

411 When a requirement can be satisfied in more than one way, alternatives can be defined within a

412 requirement. A requirement is considered met when any one of the alternatives is satisfied.

# 413 **2.8 Conditions**

414 Conditions are expressed on characteristics of resources in the deployment environment. Conditions are

- used to indicate when particular elements of the SDD are applicable, or when they should be ignored.
- Conditions are not requirements. Failure to satisfy a condition does not indicate a failure; it simply means
   the conditioned element should be ignored. Conditions are used to:
- 418 determine if a content element is applicable
- 419 choose from among values for a variable
- 420 determine when a feature is applicable
- 421 determine when a particular result is applicable
- 422 determine if a particular completion action is necessary.

423 Because conditions are always based on the characteristics of resources, they are expressed using

424 resource constraints.

# 425 **2.9 Variables**

426 Variables provide a way to associate user inputs, resource property values, fixed strings and values 427 derived from these with input arguments for artifacts and with constraints on resources.

# 428 **3 Package Descriptor**

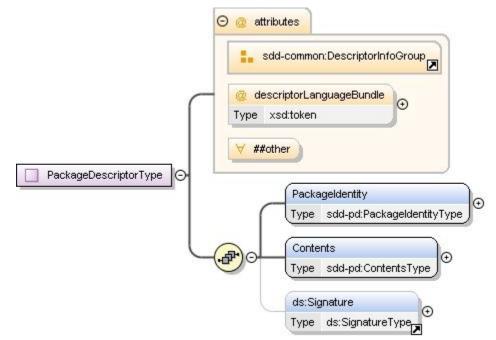
429 A package descriptor is an XML document that provides information about the identity and the contents of

430 a software package. A software package is a bundle of one or several content elements that deploy or

431 remove computer software; add features to existing software; or apply maintenance to existing software.

432 Each package descriptor is associated with a deployment descriptor.

#### 433 **3.1 PackageDescriptor**



434

#### 435 **Figure 2: PackageDescriptor structure.**

436 The root element of a package descriptor XML document is *PackageDescriptor*. *PackageDescriptor* 

437 includes elements that describe the package identity and the contents that make up the package. The

438 PackageDescriptor includes the associated deployment descriptor XML document by defining a Content

439 element with a *purpose* attribute set to *deploymentDescriptor*.

# 440 **3.1.1 PackageDescriptor Property Summary**

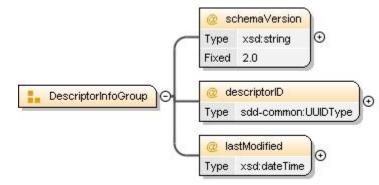
Name	Data Type	*	Description
Packageldentity	PackageldentityType	1	Human-understandable identity information for the software package.
Contents	ContentsType	1	A list of package contents.
ds:Signature	ds:SignatureType	01	A signature for the package descriptor.
schemaVersion	xsd:string	1	The descriptor complies with this version of the Solution Deployment Descriptor Specification. **fixed value="2.0"
descriptorID	UUIDType	1	Identifier of a particular package's descriptor.
lastModified	xsd:dateTime	1	The time the descriptor was last modified.

descriptorLanguageBundle	xsd:token	01	The root name of language bundle files containing translations for display text elements in the PackageDescriptor.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

# 441 **3.1.2 PackageDescriptor Property Usage Notes**

- PackageIdentity: The *PackageIdentity* element provides identity information about the software
   package that can be used by the consumer of the package for deployment planning or aggregation of
   the package into a larger solution.
- 445 See the *PackageIdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.3].
- 446
   Contents: The Contents element defines a list of one or more Content elements describing all the files that are part of the package. All files in the package MUST be defined in Contents.
- 448 See the *ContentsType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.11].
- 449 ds:Signature: The package descriptor and each file in the package MAY be digitally signed. It is
   450 RECOMMENDED that they be digitally signed by using an XML-Signature [XMLDSIG-CORE].
- 451 The signature element is an enveloped signature over the SDD package. Note that each *Content* 452 element included in the package is digitally signed indirectly via this digest. Files can also be 453 individually signed in the *Content* element.
- descriptorLanguageBundle: Language translations for elements of DisplayTextType in the 454 descriptor MAY be included in the solution package. Note that these are not translations for the 455 software deployed by the package, but rather translations only for the text in the descriptors 456 457 themselves. The root name of the files containing these translations MUST be specified in the 458 descriptorLanguageBundle attribute, which is an instance of xsd:token. Language bundles are associated with specific locales at run time using Java-style resource bundle resolution; that is, the 459 bundle filenames SHOULD take the form *languageBundle\_locale*, where *locale* consists of optional 460 language, location (country) and variant codes, separated by an underscore character. Language 461 codes consist of two lowercase letters [ISO639.2] and location codes consist of two uppercase letters 462 [ISO3166]. 463
- 464 For example, if *descriptorLanguageBundle* is set to "SampleStrings", then
- 465 "SampleStrings\_en\_US" refers to the United States English version of the SampleStrings bundle 466 and "SampleStrings\_ja" identifies the Japanese version of the same bundle.
- 467 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].
- schemaVersion, descriptorID, lastModified: See the DescriptorInfoGroup section for structure and additional usage details [3.2].

# 470 **3.2 DescriptorInfoGroup**



471

#### 472 Figure 3: DescriptorInfoGroup structure.

- 473 The attributes defined by *DescriptorInfoGroup* are included in both *PackageDescriptor* and
- 474 DeploymentDescriptor.

#### 475 **3.2.1 DescriptorInfoGroup Property Usage Notes**

- schemaVersion: The schemaVersion attribute identifies the Solution Deployment Descriptor
   specification version to which the descriptor conforms. It MUST have a fixed value of "2.0".
- descriptorID: The descriptorID attribute, combined with the lastModified attribute value, provides a unique identifier for the descriptor. The descriptorID value MUST be unique within the scope of use of the deployment descriptor or package descriptor. The descriptorID attribute is an instance of UUIDType, which is based on xsd:hexBinary with length 16. This enables use of a 128-bit UUID [IETF-UUID]. The descriptorID value supports descriptor updates by allowing updated descriptors to be correctly associated with an earlier version of the same descriptor.
- 484 For example, if a descriptor contains errors, it may be replaced by an error-free version using the 485 same *descriptorID* value but a different *lastModified* value.
- IastModified: The *lastModified* value can be used to differentiate between different versions of the
   same descriptor, for example, the descriptor for one particular package. Comparison of *lastModified* values can be used to determine which descriptor is newer.
- 489The *lastModified* attribute MUST be defined as a value that conforms to the xsd:dateTime type as490defined in [XSD] and MUST match the following lexical representation: [-]CCYY-MM-
- 491 DDThh:mm:ss[Z|(+|-)hh:mm]. This is a combination of a complete date and time of day, where
   492 the time zone can be specified as Z (UTC) or (+|-)hh:mm.
- 493 For example, the following are valid values for the *lastModified* attribute:
  - 2001-10-26T21:32:52
    - 2001-10-26T21:32:52+02:00
- 496 2001-10-26T19:32:52Z
  - 2001-10-26T19:32:52+00:00
- 498 -2001-10-26T21:32:52
  - 2001-10-26T21:32:52.12679

However, the following values would be invalid:

- 501 2001-10-26
- 502 2001-10-26T21:32
- 503 01-10-26T21:32
  - 2001-10-26T25:32:52+02:00
- 505 The first three invalid examples do not specify all the required parts, and the fourth includes an 506 out of range hours part, "25".

507

504

494

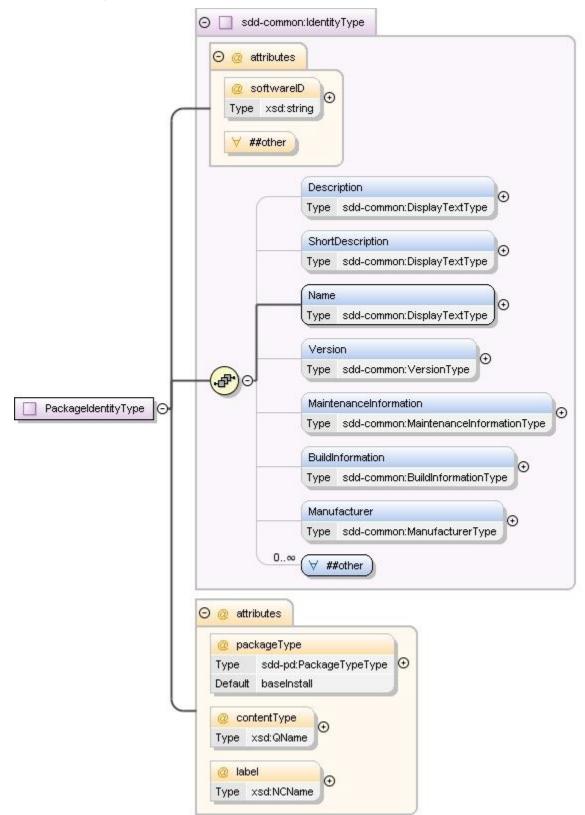
495

497

499

500

# 508 3.3 PackageldentityType



#### 509

510 **Figure 4: PackageldentityType structure.** 

511 The software package described by the SDD can be identified for humans and package management

512 software using the properties in *PackageIdentity*. The *PackageIdentity* is not to be confused with the

513 identity of the deployed software, which is described in the resulting resource elements of the deployment

514 descriptor; see the *ResultingResourceType* section [4.8.1].

# 515 **3.3.1 PackageldentityType Property Summary**

Name	Data Type	*	Description	
	[extends] IdentityType		See the IdentityType section for additional properties [3.4].	
packageType	PackageTypeType	01	The type of the package, for example, "baseInstall" or "maintenance". **default value="baseInstall".	
contentType	xsd:QName	01	The type of content provided by this package, for example, BIOS.	
label	xsd:NCName	01	A programmatic label for this package.	
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*		

# 516 **3.3.2 PackageldentityType Property Usage Notes**

517 See the *IdentityType* section for details about the inherited attributes and elements [3.4].

- packageType: The package type is provided to aid consumer understanding of the type of content
   contained in the package. A package can contain more than one type of content. In this case, a single
   *packageType* value should be selected that represents the primary content type as determined by the
   SDD author. The SDD defines a set of enumeration values in *PackageTypeType* which are
   extendable by the SDD author.
- 523 The enumerated types defined by the SDD are as follows:

527

532

533

534

535

536 537

538

539 540

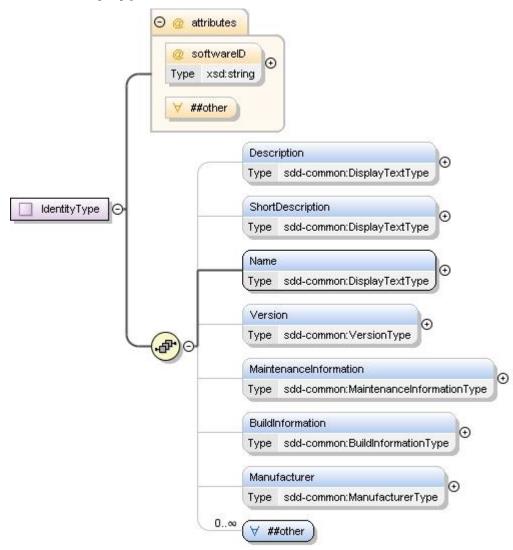
- baseInstall: The value baseInstall indicates that the package provides a complete installation
   of the solution. This package type is associated with deployment descriptors that contain
   installable units with installation artifacts that install the primary solution resources.
  - When *packageType* is not specified, this is the default value.
- baseUninstall: The value baseUninstall indicates that the package provides a complete
   uninstallation of the solution. This package type is associated with deployment descriptors
   that contain installable units with uninstall artifacts that remove the primary solution
   resources.
  - **configuration**: The value *configuration* indicates that the package configures the solution. This package type is associated with deployment descriptors that contain configuration units with configuration artifacts that configure the solution.
    - **maintenance**: The value *maintenance* indicates that the package fixes one or more problems in the solution. This package type is associated with deployment descriptors that contain installable units with update artifacts.
  - **modification**: The value *modification* indicates that the package modifies the function of the solution in some way such as by adding new function. This package type is associated with deployment descriptors that contain installable units with update artifacts.
- replacement: The value *replacement* indicates that the package installs a solution that
   replaces a previous version of the solution. Replacement MAY be associated with migration
   of data into the new solution and/or with deletion of the replaced solution. When associated
   with migration of data, installation or configuration artifacts within the solution package would
   perform the migration. When associated with deletion of the replaced solution, uninstall
   artifacts within the solution package would perform the deletion. This package type is
   associated with deployment descriptors that contain installable units with installation artifacts

- 548that deploy a set of resources that replace the set of resources associated with a previous549version of the solution.
  - **localization**: The value *localization* indicates that the package contains materials that localize deployed software for one or more languages.
- contentType: The value of *contentType* is determined by the SDD manufacturer to communicate a
   characteristic of the package that MAY be used in the manufacturer's package management system
   or other manufacturer-specific tools that use the SDD. The SDD author chooses the values; they are
   not defined in this specification.
- Iabel: The label MAY be used as an index in a package management system. The SDD author
   chooses the values; they are not defined in this specification.

# 558 **3.4 IdentityType**

550

551



559

#### 560 Figure 5: IdentityType structure.

- 561 This complex type provides identity information for the package as a whole, as well as for content
- 562 elements, which are portions of the package. Content elements are the *InstallableUnit*, *LocalizationUnit*, 563 *ConfigurationUnit*, *CompositeUnit* and *CompositeInstallable* elements defined in the deployment
- 564 descriptor.

# 565 **3.4.1 IdentityType Property Summary**

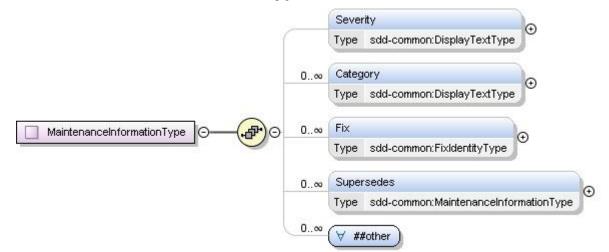
Name	Data Type	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	01	A verbose description of the package or content element.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	A limited description of the package or content element.
Name	DisplayTextType	01	A human-readable, translatable, name for the package or content element.
Version	VersionType	01	The package or content element version.
MaintenanceInformation MaintenanceInformationType		01	Information about package or content element content used when the package contains maintenance.
BuildInformation	BuildInformationType	01	A manufacturer identifier for the build of this package or content element. This property can be extended with additional manufacturer-specific information about the build.
Manufacturer	ManufacturerType	01	Information about the manufacturer of the package or content element.
	xsd:any	0*	
softwareID	xsd:string	01	A manufacturer's identification number for the software created or updated by the package or content element.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

# 566 3.4.2 IdentityType Property Usage Notes

- Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the package.
- 569 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 570 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].
- Name: When the manufacturer of the SDD has a package management system, Name in
   *PackageIdentity* should correspond to the name of the package as known in the package
   management system. Name in a content element's *Identity* should correspond to the name of the unit
   of packaging, if it is known in the package management system.
- 575 When the *PackageIdentity* element is defined, *Name* MUST be defined.
- 576Software packages that create software often have the same name as the deployed software.577Software packages that update software often have a name that reflects the fact that the package is a578maintenance package, differentiating it from the base deployed software. The author of the software579package that is described by *PackageIdentity* determines whether the *Name* is the same as or
- 580 different from the *Name* of the deployed software.
- 581 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].
- Version: This is a packaging version. In *Packageldentity*, it is the version of the package as a whole.
   In content element identities, this is the version of the unit of packaging represented by the content
   element. In either case, the SDD author MAY choose to make this version correspond to the version
   of a resulting or changed resource, but it should not be confused with resource versions.
- 586 In the case of a base install, version MAY be the same as the top level resulting resource. In the case 587 of a configuration package, version SHOULD NOT be the same as the top level resulting resource.
- 588 See the VersionType section for structure and additional usage details [3.10].

- 589 MaintenanceInformation: This is used when the package or content element describes the deployment of maintenance.
- 591 See the *MaintenanceInformationType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.5].
- BuildInformation: In *PackageIdentity*, this describes the build of the package as a whole. In content element *Identity*, this describes the build of the artifact(s) and the content element describing the artifact.
- 595 See the *BuildInformationType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.7].
- **Manufacturer**: See the *ManufacturerType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.8].
- softwareID: The software identified by *softwareID* is the software whose deployment is described by the SDD. When the manufacturer maintains software identifiers within a sales and distribution system, the *softwareID* SHOULD correspond to an identifier for the software within that system. If a format for software identifiers is not pre-existing within the manufacturer's systems, a UUID SHOULD be used for *softwareID*. When a UUID is used, it MUST be unique within the domain in which the described software is used.

# 603 **3.5 MaintenanceInformationType**



604

#### 605 **Figure 6: MaintenanceInformationType structure.**

606 If the package provides maintenance for deployed software, *MaintenanceInformation* declares information

607 about the fix or fixes provided. If the package content is a single fix, MaintenanceInformation describes

608 the information about that one fix. If the content is a collection of fixes-for example, a fix pack-

609 *MaintenanceInformation* describes each of the fixes provided by the fix pack.

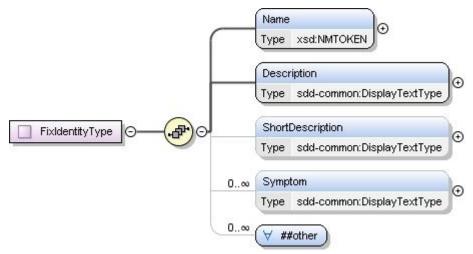
# 610 **3.5.1 MaintenanceInformationType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
Severity	DisplayTextType	01	Severity of the maintenance content.
Category	DisplayTextType	0*	Category of the maintenance content.
Supersedes	MaintenanceInformationType	0*	A previously released fix that is superseded by application of this maintenance.
Fix	FixIdentityType	0*	An included fix.
	xsd:any	0*	

# 611 **3.5.2 MaintenanceInformationType Property Usage Notes**

- Severity: This value SHOULD correspond to a severity value used within the SDD provider's support
   system. It serves as a hint to the deployer about the urgency of applying the described maintenance.
- 614 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].
- 615 Category: These values SHOULD correspond to maintenance categories within the SDD provider's support system.
- 617 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].
- Supersedes: Superseded fixes are ones that fix a problem also fixed by the superseding
   maintenance package or content element and therefore need not be applied.
- This element does not indicate whether or not the superseded fix needs to be removed. To indicate
  that the previous fix must be removed before the superseding maintenance can be applied
  successfully; the SDD author can create a requirement stating that the fix must not be present.
- 623 Superseded fixes MAY include all the information defined in *MaintenanceInformationType*. At a
- 624 minimum, a superseded fix MUST include at least one *Fix* element with the name of the superseded 625 fix defined.
- **Fix**: *Fix* elements provide information about individual fixes provided by the maintenance content.
- 627 See the *FixIdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.6].

# 628 **3.6 FixIdentityType**



629

630 Figure 7: FixIdentityType structure.

- 631 Elements of *FixIdentityType* describe fixes that will be applied when the package is deployed or the
- 632 content element is applied.

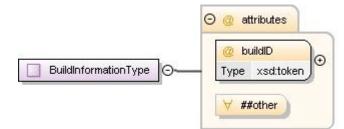
# 633 3.6.1 FixIdentityType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
Name	xsd:NMTOKEN	1	A name for the fix which is, at a minimum, unique within the scope of the resource fixed.
Description	DisplayTextType	1	A complete description of the fix.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	An abbreviated description of the fix.
Symptom	DisplayTextType	0*	A symptom of the problem fixed.
	xsd:any	0*	

# 634 3.6.2 FixIdentityType Property Usage Notes

- Name: The Name element MUST provide a value that uniquely identifies a fix within a scope defined
   by the manufacturer. This is a name provided by the manufacturer that corresponds to the fix name
   as understood in the deployment environment.
- Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the fix.
- 640 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 641 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].
- **Symptom**: Symptom strings can be used to correlate a fix with one or more experienced problems.
- 643 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].

# 644 3.7 BuildInformationType



645

#### 646 **Figure 8: BuildInformationType structure.**

647 *BuildInformationType* provides the type definition for the *BuildInformation* element in package and content 648 element identity. *BuildInformation* provides information about the creation of the package and its parts.

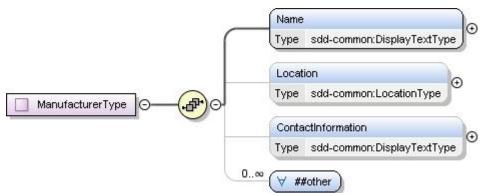
# 649 **3.7.1 BuildInformationType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description			
buildID	xsd:token	1	Identifies the build of the package or package element.			
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*				

# 650 **3.7.2 BuildInformationType Property Usage Notes**

 buildID: The *buildID* attribute is an identifier provided by the manufacturer and meaningful to developers that can be used to identify a build of the defining element. This information MUST correspond with information known in the manufacturer's build environment. It is traditionally used during problem determination to allow maintainers of the software to determine the specifics of package creation. Inclusion of *buildID* in the SDD allows the end user to provide this information to package maintainers, enabling them to correlate the deployed software with a particular known build of the software.

# 658 3.8 ManufacturerType



659

#### 660 **Figure 9: ManufacturerType structure.**

- 661 The SDD author can include information about the package manufacturer that includes name, location
- and contact information such as the address of the manufacturer's Web site or telephone number.

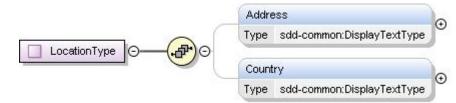
#### 663 3.8.1 ManufacturerType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
Name	DisplayTextType	1	A translatable name for the manufacturer.
Location	LocationType	01	The address and country of the manufacturer.
ContactInformation	DisplayTextType	01	Contact information for the manufacturer.
	xsd:any	0*	

#### 664 3.8.2 ManufacturerType Property Usage Notes

- Name: The value provided in the Name element MUST be an identifiable name of the manufacturer of the SDD.
- 667 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].
- **Location**: See the *LocationType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.9].
- 669 ContactInformation: This element MAY provide additional contact information for the named manufacturer, such as a support Web site address or a technical support telephone number.
- 671 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].

# 672 **3.9 LocationType**



673

#### 674 Figure 10: LocationType structure.

675 *LocationType* supports inclusion of the manufacturer's address and country in package and content

676 element identity.

#### 677 **3.9.1 LocationType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description	
Address	DisplayTextType	01	The manufacturer's address.	
Country	DisplayTextType	01	The manufacturer's country.	

#### 678 **3.9.2 LocationType Property Usage Notes**

- Address: This is the mailing address or the physical address.
- 680 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].
- 681 Country: Recording the manufacturer's country in the SDD provides information that may be of interest in relation to import and export of software.
- 683 See the *DisplayTextType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.3].

# 684 **3.10 VersionType**

*VersionType* provides the type definition for version elements in the package descriptor and deployment

- 686 descriptor. It is a simple type that is based on xsd:string with no further restrictions. This means that 687 versions in the SDD are represented simply as strings. Because resource versions exist in the
- deployment environment, their formats and semantics vary widely. For this reason, the format and
- 689 semantics of versions are not defined by this specification.

# 690 3.11 ContentsType



691

#### 692 **Figure 11: Contents structure.**

693 *ContentsType* is used in *PackageDescriptor* to provide a list of one or more *Content* elements.

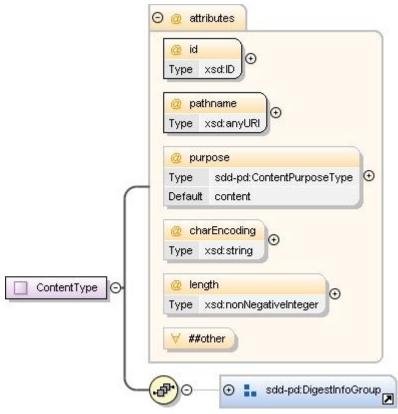
# 694 3.11.1 ContentsType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description	
Content	ContentType	1*	Describes the physical contents of the software package.	

#### 695 3.11.2 ContentsType Property Usage Notes

- 696 Content: A PackageDescriptor MUST contain a Contents element that is a list of one or more
   697 Content elements.
- 698 See the *ContentType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.12].

# 699 3.12 ContentType



700

701 **Figure 12: ContentType structure.** 

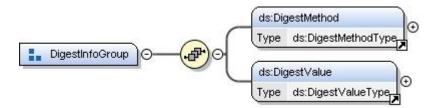
A software package includes one or more content files. *ContentType* defines the properties of a content file included in the package descriptor. Content defined in the package descriptor as part of the software package does not need to be physically co-located. Each element MUST be in a location that can be identified by a URI. The *pathname* attribute of each content file defines a URI for accessing the file. Characteristics of the content files—such as their length, purpose and character encoding—MAY be declared in the package descriptor. It is RECOMMENDED to list only content files that need to be accessed by the runtime when processing the SDD.

# 709 3.12.1 ContentType Property Summary

Name	Data Type	*	Description
ds:DigestMethod	ds:DigestMethodType	01	Specifies the digest method applied to the file.
ds:DigestValue	ds:DigestValueType	01	Specifies the Base64-encoded value of the digest of the file.
id	xsd:ID	1	An identifier used in deployment descriptors to refer to the file definition in the associated package descriptor.
pathname	xsd:anyURI	1	The absolute or relative path of the content file including the file name.
purpose	ContentPurposeType	01	Associates a purpose classification with a file. **default value="content"
charEncoding	xsd:string	01	Specifies the character encoding of the contents of the file.
length	xsd:nonNegativeInteger	01	Specifies the size of the file in bytes.

		xsd:anyAttribute	0*					
3.1	12.2 Cont	entType Propert	y Usa	ge Notes				
•	ds:DigestM	lethod, ds:DigestValu	<b>e</b> : The	se values MAY be used to assist with file verification.				
	See the Dig	estInfoGroup section for	or struc	ture and additional usage details [3.13].				
•	id: This is the deployment		ent tha	t is used as a reference in artifact elements in the				
		ute may be useful to so e messages.	oftware	that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating				
•	<b>pathname</b> : <i>pathname</i> is used to access content in the package. The path of the file MUST be a URI that specifies an absolute path or a path relative to the location of the package descriptor. It MUST include the file name. For a <i>pathname</i> that has a <i>purpose</i> of <i>descriptorLanguageBundle</i> , the SDD author SHOULD include the URI to the root resource bundle only.							
•	<b>purpose</b> : The <i>purpose</i> attribute enables the <i>PackageDescriptor</i> author to associate a classification with a file. The classification identifies the file as having a specific purpose. <i>ContentPurposeType</i> defines a union of <i>SDDContentPurposeType</i> with xsd:NCName. The <i>purpose</i> value MAY be chosen from one of the following values enumerated in <i>SDDContentPurposeType</i> or be a valid NCName value provided by the SDD author. If <i>purpose</i> is not specified, the default value is <i>content</i> .							
	Enumerated	values for <i>purpose</i> are	e:					
	<ul> <li>readMe: A file with information about the package. An implementation may choose to displ this to a user as part of the deployment process.</li> </ul>							
	<ul> <li>endUserLicenseAgreement: A file containing an end user license agreement. An implementation may choose to display this to a user as part of the deployment process.</li> </ul>							
	• res	ponseFile: A file that c	ontains	input values for an operation.				
	ass	ociated with the Packa	geDes	file containing the <i>DeploymentDescriptor</i> definition criptor. A valid <i>PackageDescriptor</i> MUST have exactly ralue of <i>deploymentDescriptor</i> .				
		<b>kageDescriptor</b> : Supp kageDescriptor of an a		gregation of packages. This is used to reference a ted package.				
	pac		ssociat	ile containing translations of text defined directly in the ed deployment descriptor. See <b>[SDDP]</b> for an example <i>dle</i> content.				
		<b>itent</b> : A file used during pose.	g deplo	yment of solution content. This is the default value for				
•	<b>charEncoding</b> : This attribute need only be used for files that a run-time is required to render. Common <i>charEncoding</i> values include "ASCII", "UTF-8", "UTF-16" and "Shift_JIS". For an extensive list of character encodings, see <b>[IANA-CHARSET]</b> .							
-	lenath: The	file length MAY be use	ed for s	imple file verification				

# 746 3.13 DigestInfoGroup



747

748 Figure 13: DigestInfoGroup structure.

When digest information is used to sign a content file, both the digest method and the digest value MUSTbe provided.

#### 751 3.13.1 DigestInfoGroup Property Usage Notes

- ds:DigestMethod, ds:DigestValue: ds:digestMethod and ds:digestValue MAY be used to digitally
   sign individual files. If files are signed, the digest value MUST be calculated over the whole of each
   file.
- 755 See **[XMLDSIG-CORE]** for details on the usage of *ds:DigestMethod* and *ds:DigestValue*.

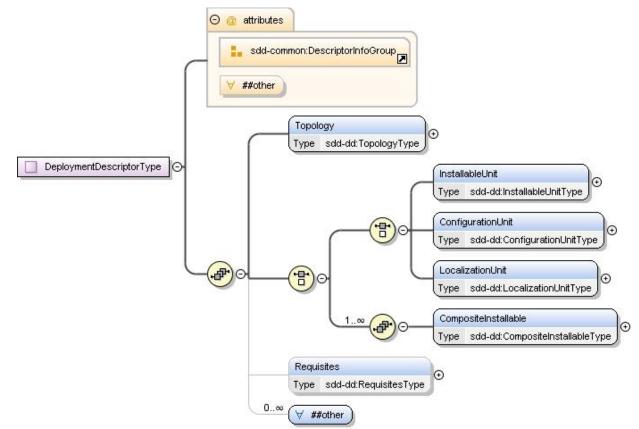
# 756 **4 Deployment Descriptor**

A solution package contains a deployment descriptor in addition to a package descriptor. The deployment

758 descriptor describes the topology, selectability, inputs, requirements and conditions of the deployment.

- 759 The deployment descriptor is associated with a package descriptor and refers to content files in that
- 760 package descriptor.

# 761 4.1 DeploymentDescriptor



#### 762

#### 763 Figure 14: DeploymentDescriptor structure.

764 DeploymentDescriptor is the top level element of a deployment descriptor. The DeploymentDescriptor defines the information required to support deployment of the package contents. This includes the 765 Topology, which declares all of the resources that may participate in deployment. It also includes one 766 767 atomic content element or one or more CompositeInstallable content elements. Atomic content elements 768 are InstallableUnit, ConfigurationUnit, or LocalizationUnit. Atomic content elements define artifacts that can be processed to deploy software resources. They are atomic because they cannot aggregate other 769 770 content elements. A CompositeInstallable element is the root of a content element hierarchy that defines 771 content that performs the one deployment operation supported by the CompositeInstallable. A 772 CompositeInstallable can define base, selectable and localization content as well as the aggregation of other content elements. 773

# 774 **4.1.1 DeploymentDescriptor Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description	
Topology	Topology TopologyType		Defines resources that are required, created or modified by	
sdd-v2.0-csd02 Copyright © OASIS Ope	en 2011. All Rights Reserved.	Star	ndards Track Work Product	16 May 2011 Page 36 of 187

			deployment.
InstallableUnit	InstallableUnitType	01	Defines content that installs, updates and/or uninstalls resources. When an InstallableUnit is defined, no ConfigurationUnit, LocalizationUnit or CompositeInstallable elements can be defined.
ConfigurationUnit	ConfigurationUnitType	01	Defines content that configures resources. When a ConfigurationUnit is defined, no InstallableUnit, LocalizationUnit or CompositeInstallable elements can be defined.
LocalizationUnit	LocalizationUnitType	01	Defines content that installs, updates and/or uninstalls translated materials. When a LocalizationUnit is defined, no InstallableUnit, ConfigurationUnit or CompositeInstallable elements can be defined.
CompositeInstallable	CompositeInstallableType	0*	Defines a hierarchy of base, selectable and/or localization content used to perform one deployment lifecycle operation. When one or more CompositeInstallable elements are defined, no InstallableUnit, ConfigurationUnit or LocalizationUnit elements can be defined.
Requisites	RequisitesType	01	A list of references to SDD packages that can optionally be deployed to satisfy deployment requirements of the defining SDD.
	xsd:any	0*	Describes completion actions such as restart and the conditions under which the action is applied.
schemaVersion	xsd:string	1	The descriptor complies with this version of the Solution Deployment Descriptor Specification. **fixed value="2.0"
descriptorID	UUIDType	1	Identifier of the deployment descriptor for a particular set of deployable content.
lastModified	xsd:dateTime	1	The time the descriptor was last modified.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

# 775 4.1.2 DeploymentDescriptor Property Usage Notes

- Topology: *Topology* provides a logical view of all resources that may participate in any particular
   deployment. A resource can participate by being required, created or modified by the deployment. A
   required resource MAY also play the role of target resource, meaning that it can process artifacts to
   perform some portion of the deployment. The resources that actually participate in a particular
   deployment are determined by the user inputs, selections and resource bindings provided during that
   deployment.
- 782 See the *TopologyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.1].
- InstallableUnit, ConfigurationUnit, LocalizationUnit, CompositeInstallable: A simple software deployment that uses a single artifact for each supported deployment operation MAY be described using an SDD that defines a single atomic content element–*InstallableUnit*, *ConfigurationUnit* or *LocalizationUnit*.
- A software deployment that requires multiple artifacts, aggregates other deployment packages or has
   selectable content MAY be described using an SDD that defines one or more *CompositeInstallable* elements. Each *CompositeInstallable* MUST describe one deployment lifecycle operation for the
- 789 elements. Each *compositeinstaliable* MOST describe one deployment lifecycle operation for the 790 package.

- 791 See the respective sections (*InstallableUnitType* [4.3.1], *ConfigurationUnitType* [4.3.2],
- *LocalizationUnitType* [4.13.2] and *CompositeInstallableType* [4.9.1]) for structure and additional
   usage details.
- **Requisites**: When the package author chooses to provide deployment packages for required software, those packages are described by *Requisite* elements in *Requisites*.
- Including requisite packages in the SDD package MAY provide a convenient way for the deployer tosatisfy one or more SDD requirements.
- 798 See the *RequisitesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.10.5].
- schemaVersion, descriptorID, lastModified: These attributes can be useful to tooling that manages, creates or modifies deployment descriptors.
- 801 See the *DescriptorInfoGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [3.2].

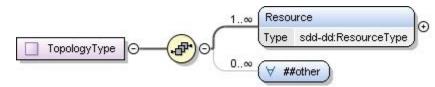
# 802 **4.2 Topology**

The SDD's topology describes all the resources that may be required, created or modified when any of the deployment operations supported by the SDD are performed.

Primary identifying characteristics of the resources can be defined in topology. Constraints beyond these
 primary characteristics are not defined in topology; they are defined in content elements that reference
 the resource definitions in topology.

- The topology includes identification of *hosts–hostedBy* relationships between resources. When both
- resources in that relationship participate in a particular deployment, the relationship is considered arequirement for that deployment.
- 811 It is possible that only a subset of the resources described in topology will play a role in a particular
- 812 deployment. This is determined by the selection of content elements for the particular deployment. The
- resources that are required, created or modified by the content elements in scope for the deployment are
- the ones that will participate in the deployment and so are associated with resources in the deploymentenvironment.
- 816 At deployment time, definitions of the resources that participate in that particular deployment are
- 817 associated with actual resource instances in the deployment environment. The mechanisms for
- 818 associating resource definitions with resource instances are not described by the SDD. The SDD
- 819 metadata describes the characteristics of the participating resources. Whether associations of resource
- 820 instances with matching characteristics are made by user choice or entirely by software does not affect
- the success of the deployment. Resource characteristics used when making this association include
- those defined in topology plus all those defined in constraints on the resource in the content elements that are in scope for the particular deployment.
- 824 Some topologies are variable. That is, a particular set of logical resources of the same type in the
- topology might be associated with different physical resource instances or the same physical resource
- 826 during deployment. In this case, a separate logical resource definition is created in topology for each
- 827 possible physical resource instance. Uniqueness constraints can then be used to describe the conditions
- 828 under which the separate resources can be associated with a single resource.
- All resource definitions in the SDD are in topology. All other descriptions of resources in the SDD are references to the resource definitions in the topology.

## 831 **4.2.1 TopologyType**



832



The *Topology* element defines one or more hierarchies of resource specifications that describe the resources that MAY play a role in the deployment of the contents of the solution package. These resource

836 specifications do not identify specific resource instances in a specific deployment environment. Instead,

837 they are logical specifications of resources that can be associated with specific resource instances in the

838 deployment environment for a particular deployment based on the described resource identity

characteristics. These resources have a role in a particular solution deployment only when they are

required, created or modified by a content element, or referred to by a variable, in that particular solutiondeployment.

## 842 4.2.1.1 TopologyType Property Summary

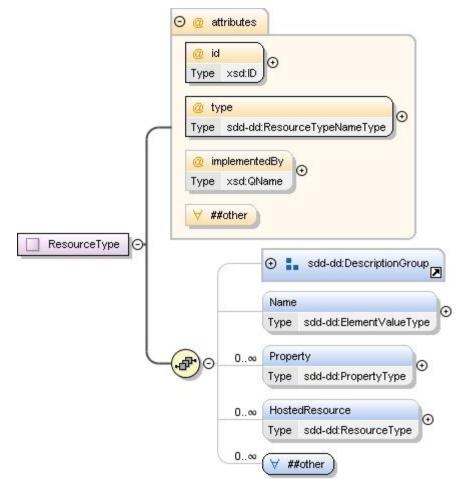
Name	Туре	*	Description
Resource	ResourceType	1*	The root of a tree of resources that play a role in the solution.
	xsd:any	0*	

# 843 **4.2.1.2 TopologyType Property Usage Notes**

Resource: The SDD author's decision to model a resource in the deployment environment as a resource in the SDD depends on the need to know about that resource when planning for deployment, aggregating, deploying and managing the resource lifecycle using the SDD. All resources required by the solution SHOULD be included. For all *Requirements* declared in the SDD, resources MUST be specified. Resources referred to by *ResultingResource* or *ResultingChange* elements MUST also be included. The more complete the SDD is, the more useful it will be in guiding successful deployment.

851 See the *ResourceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.2].

## 852 4.2.2 ResourceType



853

#### 854 Figure 16: ResourceType structure.

855 Elements of *ResourceType*—both the top level *Resource* elements and the *HostedResource* elements 856 within the resource hierarchy—make up the topology of an SDD. Each *Resource* element declares, at a 857 minimum, the type of the resource. Values for resource type are not defined by this specification. A core

858 assumption of this specification is that an understanding of specific resource types and resource

characteristics are shared by the deployment descriptor author and the deployment software. Therefore, if
 the deployment descriptor author declares a new resource type, then deployment software operating on
 the SDD needs to understand how to handle that resource type.

862 In addition to defining type, the resource elements MAY specify other identity properties that can be used 863 to identify instances of the resource in the deployment environment. The resource identity element,

*Property,* is optional and MAY be specified in content elements rather than in topology. Identity properties
 used in the resource specification in topology MUST be those that do not change during deployment,
 even when the resource is updated.

867 For example, during an update, software may change its version string, thus the version string is not 868 an appropriate identity property.

869 *ResourceType* provides the type definition for the *Resource* and *HostedResource* elements defined in

*Topology*. All resources MAY nest resource definitions for resources that they host. To host a resource
 means to provide the execution environment for that resource.

- 872 For example, an operating system provides the execution environment for software, and a database
- engine provides the execution environment for a database table. The operating system hosts thesoftware and the database engine hosts the database table.
- 875 Each resource in these hierarchies may play a role in solution deployment.

876 877 878		t elements determine a resource's participation and role(s) in a particular solution deployment. t elements can refer to resources in <i>Topology</i> in several ways. A resource can be identified via DREF:
879 880 881	•	as the target of the content element's artifacts. A target resource is a resource that is capable of processing a particular artifact. A target resource is often, but not always, the host of the resources created by the artifacts it processes.
882 883 884 885		For example, an operating system may be the target resource of an artifact that is a zip file containing a J2EE application. However, when the J2EE application is deployed, a J2EE server is the host resource of the application. Thus, the OS hosts the artifact and the J2EE server hosts the J2EE application.
886 887		See the <i>targetResourceRef</i> attribute in the <i>InstallableUnitType</i> [4.3.1], <i>ConfigurationUnitType</i> [4.3.2] and <i>LocalizationUnitType</i> [4.13.2] sections.
888	•	as the required base for an update applied by the artifact referenced by the content element.
889		See the <i>RequiredBaseType</i> section [4.7.8].
890	•	as the resource that will be created by deploying the artifact referenced by the content element.
891		See the ResultingResourceType section [4.8.1].
892	•	as the resource that will be changed by deploying the artifact referenced by the content element.
893		See the ResultingChangeType section [4.8.2].
894 895	•	as the localization base for translated materials. The localization base is the resource that is localized by deploying the translated materials.
896		See the LocalizationBase element in the LocalizationUnitType section [4.13.2].
897	•	as a required resource named in the content element's Requirements.
898		See the <i>RequirementsType</i> section [4.7.1].
899	•	to establish a variable value from a resource property.
900		See the ResourcePropertyType section [4.6.18].

901 One resource MAY be referred to by any number of content elements and can be identified to play any or 902 all of the roles just listed. When a content element participates in a particular solution deployment, the 903 resources it references participate in that solution deployment and are associated with resource instances 904 in the deployment environment.

# 905 4.2.2.1 ResourceType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	01	A description of the resource and its role in the solution described by the SDD.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	A short description of the resource and its role.
Name	VariableExpressionType	01	The name of the resource as known in the deployment environment. [DEPRECATED in SDD v2.0]
Property	PropertyType	0*	An identity property of the resource.
HostedResource	ResourceType	0*	A resource that participates in the solution and that is hosted by the defining resource.
	xsd:any	0*	
id	xsd:ID	1	An identifier of the resource scoped to the descriptor.
implementedBy	xsd:QName	01	A reference to another hosted resource in topology.

type	ResourceTypeNameType	1	A well-known resource type.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

### 906 4.2.2.2 ResourceType Property Usage Notes

- 907 Description, ShortDescription: If used, these elements MUST provide a human-readable
   908 description of the resource.
- 909 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 910 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- 911 Name: The resource name is an identifying characteristic of the resource that correlates with a name
   912 for the resource in the deployment environment.
- 913 The type of the Name element, VariableExpressionType, allows the resource name to be expressed
   914 as a simple string or in terms of a user input parameter or other variable.
- 915 An example of a good use of a variable expression in Resource.Name is to make sure that the 916 installation directory is hosted on a file system that has sufficient space available for deployment. 917 In this example, the file system resource element would define a HostedResource element for the 918 directory. The Name of the directory would be expressed as a variable expression that refers to a user input parameter for installation location. Content elements that use the installation directory 919 920 would express a requirement on the directory and on the file system with the additional constraint 921 that the file system have a certain amount of available space (to satisfy the consumption 922 constraints). The fact that both resources are required and that they are defined with a hostshostedBy relationship in Topology, means that the directory that is used must be the installation 923 924 directory and it must be hosted by a file system that meets the consumption constraint for 925 available space.
- 926 Only the Variable elements defined in a top level content element can be used to define a resource
   927 Name, because these are the only variables visible within Topology.

928 If the name of a resource is changed during deployment, for example, during an update, then the
 929 resource name SHOULD NOT be included in the resource specification. Instead, the pre-update
 930 resource name SHOULD be specified in the *RequiredBase* element of the installable unit that
 931 provides the update, and the post-update name SHOULD be specified in the *ResultingResource* 932 element of the same installable unit.

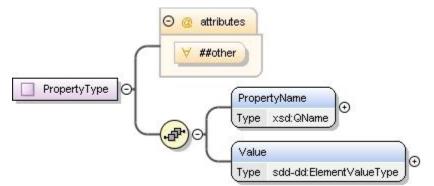
- 933 See the VariableExpressionType section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 934 [Starting with SDD v2.0, *Name* has been deprecated. See the *Property* element below for the 935 appropriate method for specifying a resource identifier.]
- Property: *Property* elements MUST be used to identify the resource instance(s). Each property included represents an identifying characteristic necessary for accurate run-time resolution of the resource instance(s).
- 939 If a resource can be identified by a property that represents the name for that resource, the SDD 940 author SHOULD include a *Property* element and MUST set the value of *PropertyName* to "Name".
- 941 See the *PropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.3].
- HostedResource: A Resource MAY define HostedResource elements. Each HostedResource
   element is an instance of ResourceType. When both the host and the hosted resource participate in a
   particular solution deployment, the associated resource instances selected for use during that
   deployment must have a hosts relationship.
- For example, a Web application declared to be hosted on a Web server must be hosted on the instance of the Web server that is selected for use during the deployment.
- 948 If only the host resource is identified by the *DeploymentDescriptor's* content elements as participating 949 in the solution, then there is no assumption that the hosted resource exists.

- id: The *id* attribute uniquely identifies the resource element within the *DeploymentDescriptor*. This *id* value is used by other elements in the *DeploymentDescriptor* to refer to this resource. This value is created by the descriptor author.
- The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating log and trace messages.
- 955 implementedBy: The *implementedBy* attribute is useful for type casting a resource to another
   956 defined hosted resource.
- For example, an SDD producer needs to deploy a database. The only property with which the
  producer is concerned is the destination path property. It is cumbersome to require the producer
  and the runtime to both handle the hosted resource as database specific when a generic resource
  type will suffice for the operation.
- 961 In this case it is useful for the SDD producer to define a hosted resource as a generic resource
   962 type and use it to typecast the specific database resource type. This allows subsequent operations
   963 to recognize that a database has been deployed to the hosting environment even though a generic
   964 resource type was used to perform that deployment.
- 965To do this, the SDD producer MUST define a generic hosted resource. This is done by defining a966hosted resource with the type attribute being a xsd: QName reference to a generic resource type967from the profile. The SDD producer then defines the specific hosted resource. To typecast the968specific hosted resource, the previously defined generic hosted resource should be specified in the969implementedBy attribute.

970 See **[SDDEX]** for an example that demonstrates this use of the *implementedBy* attribute.

971 type: The type attribute defines the class of resource. The value of type correlates with the resource 972 type known for the resource in the deployment environment. ResourceTypeNameType restricts type to valid xsd: QNames. The values for type are not defined by this specification. Creators of 973 DeploymentDescriptors rely on knowledge of resource types that are understood by supporting 974 975 infrastructure in the target environment. To honor the descriptor author's intent, the deploying 976 infrastructure must be able to discover the existence of resources of the types defined in the SDD; the 977 values of the resource's properties; and the existence and type of resource relationships. The 978 deploying infrastructure also needs to understand how to use the artifact types associated with the 979 resource type to create, modify and delete the resource.

## 980 4.2.3 PropertyType



981

### 982 Figure 17: PropertyType structure.

983 *PropertyType* provides the type definition for elements used to declare an identity property of a resource,

namely, the *Property* elements of *Resource* and *HostedResource* in *Topology*. It also provides the type
 definition for *Property* elements in *Relationship* and *RelationshipConstraint*.

## 986 4.2.3.1 PropertyType Property Summary

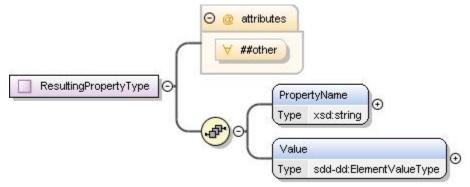
Name	Туре	*	Description

PropertyName	xsd:QName	1	The property name.	
Value	ElementValueType	1	The property value.	
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*		

## 987 4.2.3.2 PropertyType Property Usage Notes

- PropertyName: The *PropertyName* MAY be used to provide identification for the resource in the deployment environment.
- 990 The *PropertyName* MAY be used to provide constraints on the configuration of a resource.
- 991 Value: Evaluation of the Value expression provides the value of the property.
- 992 See the *ElementValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.2].

# 993 4.2.4 ResultingPropertyType



994

## 995 Figure 18: ResultingPropertyType structure.

- 996 ResultingPropertyType provides the type definition for elements used to declare an identity property of a
- 997 resulting resource or to declare a configuration change to a resource property which results from 998 deployment of an artifact.

### second deployment of an annact

# 999 4.2.4.1 ResultingPropertyType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
PropertyName	xsd:string	1	The resulting property name.
Value	ElementValueType	1	The resulting property value.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	Additional attributes of the resulting property.

# 1000 **4.2.4.2 ResultingPropertyType Property Usage Notes**

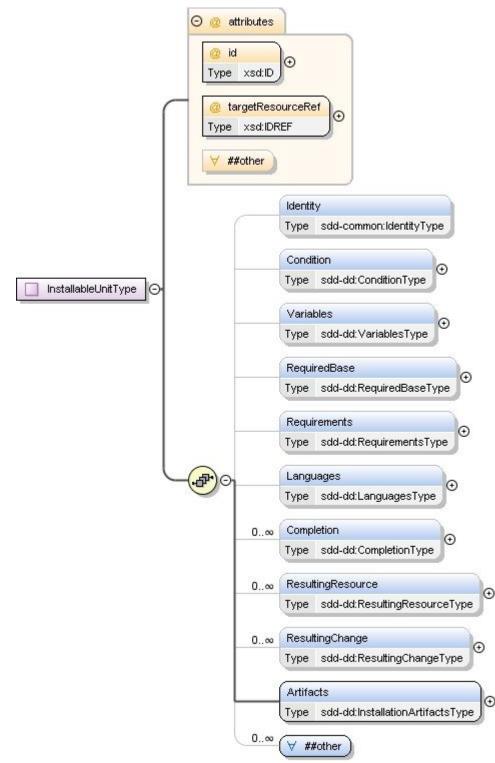
- PropertyName: The *PropertyName* MAY be used to provide additional identification for the resource in the deployment environment.
- 1003 The *PropertyName* MAY be used to declare a configuration change to a resource.
- **Value**: Evaluation of the *Value* expression provides the value of the resulting property.
- 1005 See the *ElementValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.2].

# 1006 **4.3 Atomic Content Elements**

1007 The package descriptor defines package content that includes artifacts whose processing results in 1008 deployment of the software package. The deployment descriptor defines metadata associated with those

- 1009 artifacts. The metadata includes conditions, requirements, results, inputs, outputs and completion actions.
- 1010 Metadata throughout the deployment descriptor is associated with package content in the definition of
- 1011 atomic content elements. The atomic content elements are *InstallableUnit*, *ConfigurationUnit* and
- 1012 LocalizationUnit. These are the only content elements that define Artifacts elements.
- Artifact elements identify an artifact file or set of files defined in package content whose processing will
   perform all or a portion of the deployment for a particular deployment lifecycle operation. The name of the
   artifact element indicates the operation supported by the artifact. Names of the artifact elements are
- 1016 created by prefixing "Artifacts" with the operation name. The artifacts defined for use in the SDD are 1017 *InstallArtifact, UpdateArtifact, UndoArtifact, UninstallArtifact, RepairArtifact* and *ConfigArtifact*.
- 1017 InstallArtilact, UpdateArtilact, UndoArtilact, UninstallArtilact, RepairArtilact and ConligArtilact.
- 1018 Artifact elements define the inputs and outputs, substitution values and types associated with the artifact
- 1019 files. The content element's target resource, identified by *targetResourceRef*, processes the artifact files 1020 with the defined inputs to perform deployment operations. Examples of artifact types include zip files, rpm
- files and executable install files. Artifact types are not defined by this specification. The artifact types
- 1022 defined in the SDD need to be understood by software that processes the SDD.
- 1023 There MAY be multiple atomic content elements within a composite installable that describe the 1024 deployment of multiple resources as part of a single software deployment or there MAY be a single 1025 atomic content element (singleton) in the deployment descriptor that describes the entirety of a simple 1026 deployment. When an atomic content element is used in a *CompositeInstallable*, it MUST define exactly 1027 one artifact. When an atomic content element is a singleton, it MUST define at least one artifact element 1028 and MAY define one of each type of artifact element allowed for its type. The inclusion of an artifact
- 1029 element in a singleton atomic content element implies support for the associated operation.
- For example, a singleton *ConfigurationUnit* that defines a *ConfigArtifact* associates a configure operation with the *ConfigArtifact*. Similarly, an SDD with a singleton *InstallableUnit* that defines an *InstallArtifact* and an *UpdateArtifact* associates an *install* operation with the *InstallArtifact* and an *update* operation with the *UpdateArtifact*.
- 1034 When an atomic content element is defined within a *CompositeInstallable* hierarchy, its one artifact MUST 1035 support the single top level operation associated with the *CompositeInstallable*. The single artifact defined 1036 need not be an artifact for the operation defined for the *CompositeInstallable*.
- 1037 For example, in a *CompositeInstallable* that defines metadata for an *update* operation, there may be
- 1038 one InstallableUnit that defines an InstallArtifact element and another InstallableUnit that defines an
- 1039 *UpdateArtifact* element. Both of these artifacts are used when performing the overall *update* operation 1040 defined for the *CompositeInstallable*.

# 1041 4.3.1 InstallableUnitType



1042

1043 **Figure 19: InstallableUnitType structure.** 

1044 The *InstallableUnit* element is an atomic content element that defines artifacts that install or update

1045 software and defines requirements for applying those artifacts. It may also define artifacts that undo an 1046 update or that uninstall or repair existing software.

### 1047 **4.3.1.1 InstallableUnitType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
Identity	IdentityType	01	Human-understandable identity information about the InstallableUnit.
Condition	ConditionType	01	A condition that determines if the content element is relevant to a particular deployment.
Variables	VariablesType	01	Variables for use within the InstallableUnit's requirements and artifact definitions.
RequiredBase	RequiredBaseType	01	A resource that will be updated when the InstallableUnit's UpdateArtifact is processed.
Requirements	RequirementsType	01	Requirements that must be met prior to successful processing of the InstallableUnit's artifacts.
Languages	LanguagesType	01	Languages supported by the InstallableUnit.
Completion	CompletionType	0*	Describes completion actions such as restart and the conditions under which the action is applied.
ResultingResource	ResultingResourceType	0*	A resource that will be installed or updated by processing the InstallableUnit's artifacts.
ResultingChange	ResultingChangeType	0*	A resource that will be configured by processing the InstallableUnit's artifacts.
Artifacts	InstallationArtifactsType	1	The set of artifacts associated with the InstallableUnit.
	xsd:any	0*	
id	xsd:ID	1	An identifier for the InstallableUnit scoped to the deployment descriptor.
targetResourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	Reference to the resource that can process the InstallableUnit's artifacts.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

### 1048 **4.3.1.2 InstallableUnitType Property Usage Notes**

- Identity: The InstallableUnit's Identity element defines human-understandable information that reflects the identity of the solution as understood by the end user of the solution.
- 1051 If the *InstallableUnit* defines a resulting resource, the *Identity* of the *InstallableUnit* SHOULD reflect 1052 the identity of the resulting resource.
- 1053 When the *InstallableUnit* is the only content element in the deployment descriptor, its *Identity* MAY define values that are the same as the corresponding *PackageIdentity* element values.

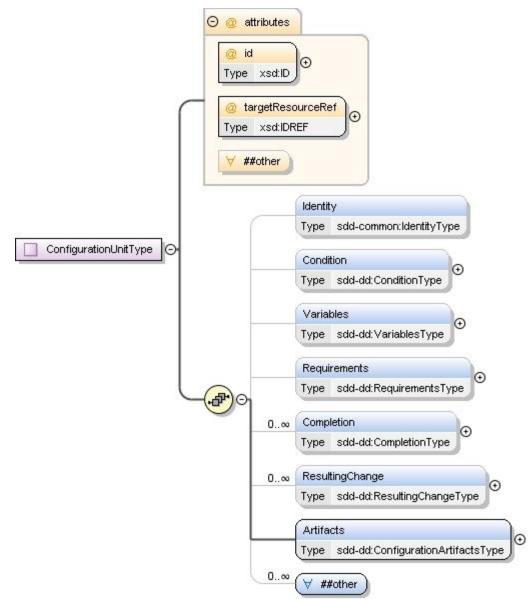
- 1055This would be useful, for example, in a case where the package is known by the same name as1056the resource created by the *InstallableUnit*.
- 1057 See the *IdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.4].
- Condition: A *Condition* is used when the *InstallableUnit's* content should be deployed only when certain conditions exist in the deployment environment.
- 1060For example, one InstallableUnit may be applicable only when the operating system resource is1061resolved to a Linux®<sup>2</sup> operating system during deployment. The InstallableUnit would define a1062Condition stating that the type of the operating system must be Linux for the InstallableUnit to be1063considered in scope for a particular deployment.
- 1064 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
- Variables: An InstallableUnit's Variables element defines variables that are used in the definition of the InstallableUnit's requirements and in parameters and properties passed to the InstallableUnit's target resource.
- 1068 When the deployment descriptor defines a single *InstallableUnit* at the top level, that is, not inside a 1069 *CompositeInstallable*, the variables it defines MAY be referred to by any element under *Topology*.
- 1070 See the *VariablesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.5].
- Languages: When translated materials are deployed by the *InstallableUnit's* artifacts, the languages of the translations are listed in *Languages*.
- 1073 See the *LanguagesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.6].
- RequiredBase: When an *InstallableUnit* can be used to update resources, the *RequiredBase* element identifies the resources that can be updated.
- 1076 See the *RequiredBaseType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.8].
- Requirements: *Requirements* specified in an *InstallableUnit* identify requirements that must be met
   prior to successful processing of the *InstallableUnit's* artifacts.
- 1079 See the *RequirementsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.1].
- Completion: A Completion element MUST be included if the artifact being processed requires a system operation such as a reboot or logoff to occur to function successfully after deployment or if the artifact executes a system operation to complete deployment of the contents of the artifact.
- 1083 There MUST be an artifact associated with the operation defined by a *Completion* element.
- 1084For example, if there is a Completion element for the install operation, the InstallableUnit must1085define an InstallArtifact.
- 1086 See the *CompletionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.14].
- 1087 ResultingResource: An InstallableUnit's ResultingResource element identifies the resources in 1088 Topology that will be installed or updated when the InstallableUnit's artifacts are processed.
- 1089 See the *ResultingResourceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.1].

ResultingChange: Multiple content elements within the SDD MAY specify the same resource in their
 *ResultingChange* elements. In this case each content element is capable of modifying the
 configuration of that resource.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> Linux® is the registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the U.S. and other countries.

- 1093 An example use of the *ResultingChange* element is to understand whether or not one content 1094 element can satisfy the requirements specified in another content element.
- 1095 See the *ResultingChangeType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.2].
- Artifacts: When the *InstallableUnit* is a singleton defined outside of a *CompositeInstallable*, it MUST define at least one artifact element and MAY define one of each type of artifact element allowed for its type. The inclusion of an artifact element in a singleton *InstallableUnit* implies support for the associated operation.
- 1100 When the *InstallableUnit* is defined within a *CompositeInstallable*, it MUST define exactly one artifact. 1101 The artifact defined MAY be any artifact allowed in an *InstallableUnit* and it MUST support the single 1102 top level operation defined by the *CompositeInstallable*. This does not mean the operation associated 1103 with the artifact has to be the same as the one defined by the *CompositeInstallable*.
- For example, an update of a resource may be required to support an install of the overall solution, in which case the *InstallableUnit* would define an *UpdateArtifact* to support the top level *install* operation.
- 1107 See the *InstallationArtifactsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.4].
- id: The *id* attribute is referenced in features to identify an *InstallableUnit* selected by the feature and
   *Dependency* elements to indicate a dependency on processing of the content element.
- 1110 The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating 1111 log and trace messages.
- targetResourceRef: The targetResourceRef attribute identifies the resource that will process the InstallableUnit's artifacts.
- 1114 The resources created or modified by artifact processing are frequently, but not necessarily, hosted 1115 by the target resource.
- 1116For example, an operating system may be the target resource of an artifact that is a zip file1117containing a J2EE application. However, when the J2EE application is deployed, a J2EE server is1118the host resource of the application. Thus, the OS hosts the artifact and the J2EE server hosts1119the J2EE application.
- 1120 This value MUST match an *id* of a resource element in *Topology*.
- 1121 The target may be a resource that has not yet been created. In this case, there is a dependency on 1122 the complete installation of the target resource prior to applying the *InstallableUnit*. This dependency
- 122 the complete installation of the target resource prior to applying the *installableOnit*. This dependent 123 MUST be represented in a *Dependency* element within *Requirements* that apply to the
- 1124 InstallableUnit.

# 1125 4.3.2 ConfigurationUnitType



1126

### 1127 **Figure 20: ConfigurationUnitType structure.**

1128 The *ConfigurationUnit* element defines artifacts that configure one or more existing resources. It also 1129 defines the requirements for applying those artifacts. It MUST NOT install, update, or uninstall resources.

# 1130 4.3.2.1 ConfigurationUnitType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
Identity	IdentityType	01	Human-understandable identity information about the ConfigurationUnit.
Condition	ConditionType	01	A condition that determines if the content element is relevant to a particular deployment.
Variables	VariablesType	01	Variables for use within the ConfigurationUnit's requirement and artifact definitions.

Requirements	RequirementsType	01	Requirements that must be met prior to successful processing of the ConfigurationUnit's artifacts.
Completion	CompletionType	0*	Describes completion actions such as restart and the conditions under which the action is applied.
ResultingChange	ResultingChangeType	0*	A definition of changes made to a resource that is configured by processing the ConfigurationUnit's ConfigArtifact.
Artifacts	ConfigurationArtifactsType	1	The artifact associated with the ConfigurationUnit.
	xsd:any	0*	
id	xsd:ID	1	An identifier for the ConfigurationUnit scoped to the deployment descriptor.
targetResourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	Reference to the resource that can process the ConfigurationUnit's artifacts.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

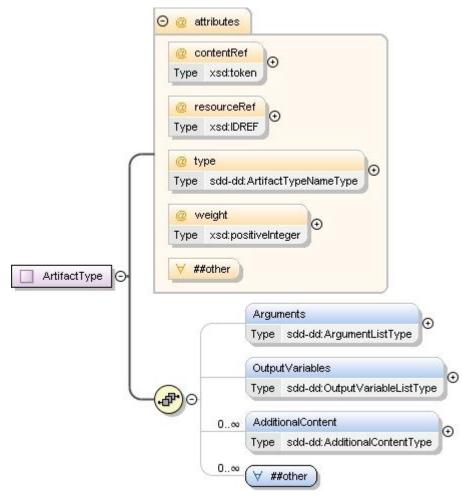
# 1131 4.3.2.2 ConfigurationUnitType Property Usage Notes

1132 1133 1134 1135 1136	•	<b>Identity</b> : The <i>ConfigurationUnit's Identity</i> element defines human-understandable information that reflects the identity of the provided configuration as understood by the end user of the solution. <i>Identity</i> has elements that are common with elements in the corresponding <i>PackageDescriptor's PackageIdentity</i> element, for example, <i>Name</i> and <i>Version</i> . The values of these common elements SHOULD be the same as the corresponding <i>PackageIdentity</i> element values.
1137		See the IdentityType section for structure and additional usage details [3.4].
1138 1139	•	<b>Condition</b> : A <i>Condition</i> is used when the deployment of configuration content is dependent on the existence of certain conditions in the deployment environment.
1140 1141 1142		For example, a package that has one configuration artifact that creates a database table for one database product and a different artifact that creates a table for a different database product would have two configuration units, each with a condition on the associated database product.
1143		See the ConditionType section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
1144 1145	•	<b>Variables</b> : A <i>ConfigurationUnit's Variables</i> element defines variables that are used in the definition of requirements and artifact parameters.
1146 1147		When the deployment descriptor defines a single <i>ConfigurationUnit</i> at the top level, that is, not inside a <i>CompositeInstallable</i> , the variables it defines MAY be referred to by any element under <i>Topology</i> .
1148		See the VariablesType section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.5].
1149 1150	•	<b>Requirements</b> : <i>Requirements</i> specified in a <i>ConfigurationUnit</i> identify requirements that MUST be met prior to successful processing of the <i>ConfigurationUnit's</i> artifacts.
1151		See the RequirementsType section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.1].
1152 1153 1154	•	<b>Completion</b> : A <i>Completion</i> element MUST be included if the artifact being processed requires a system operation such as a reboot or logoff to occur to function successfully after deployment or if the artifact executes a system operation to complete deployment of the contents of the artifact.
1155		There MUST be an artifact associated with the operation defined by a Completion element.
1156 1157		For example, if there is a <i>Completion</i> element for the <i>configure</i> operation, the <i>ConfigurationUnit</i> must define a <i>ConfigArtifact</i> .
1158		See the <i>CompletionType</i> section for the structure and additional usage details [4.3.14].
1150	_	<b>ResultingChange</b> : Configuration changes made when the configuration artifact is proceeded

ResultingChange: Configuration changes made when the configuration artifact is processed
 SHOULD be declared here. This information may be necessary when the SDD is aggregated into
 another SDD and the resulting change satisfies a constraint in the aggregation. The information

- 1162 declared here can be compared with resource constraints to determine if application of the 1163 *ConfigurationUnit* will satisfy the constraint.
- 1164 See the *ResultingChangeType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.2].
- Artifacts: When the *ConfigurationUnit* is a singleton defined outside of a *CompositeInstallable*, it
   MUST define at least one artifact element. The inclusion of an artifact element in a singleton
   *ConfigurationUnit* implies support for the associated operation.
- 1168 When the *ConfigurationUnit* is defined within a *CompositeInstallable*, it MUST define exactly one 1169 artifact. The artifact defined MUST be a *ConfigArtifact* and it MUST support the single top level 1170 operation defined by the *CompositeInstallable*.
- 1171 See the *ConfigurationArtifactsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.5].
- id: The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating log and trace messages.
- targetResourceRef: The targetResourceRef attribute identifies the resource in *Topology* that will process the *ConfigurationUnit's* artifacts to configure the resources identified by the *ConfigurationUnit's* ResultingChange definition.
- 1177 This value MUST match an *id* of a resource element in *Topology*.

# 1178 **4.3.3 ArtifactType**



1179

#### 1180 Figure 21: ArtifactType structure.

1181 *ArtifactType* elements define the files, arguments and other information required to perform a particular 1182 deployment operation. Every artifact that can be defined in a content element is an instance of 1183 ArtifactType. These are InstallArtifact, UpdateArtifact, UndoArtifact, UninstallArtifact, RepairArtifact, and

1184 ConfigArtifact.

1185 <b>4.3.3.1 ArtifactType Property Summary</b>
---

Name	Туре	*	Description
Arguments	ArgumentListType	01	Arguments used during processing of the artifact.
OutputVariables	OutputVariableListType	01	Variables whose values are set during processing of the artifact.
AdditionalContent	AdditionalContentType	0*	Additional content files that are part of the artifact.
	xsd:any	0*	
contentRef	xsd:token	01	The primary artifact file. Not used if resourceRef is used.
resourceRef	xsd:IDREF	01	The resulting resource representing the artifact file. Not used if contentRef is used.
type	ArtifactTypeNameType	01	Type of the primary artifact file.
weight	xsd:positiveInteger	01	The time required to process this artifact relative to all other artifacts in the SDD.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

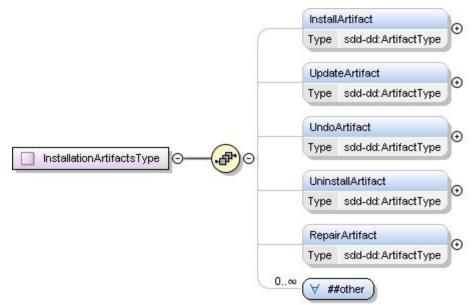
# 1186 4.3.3.2 ArtifactType Property Usage Notes

- Arguments: Inputs to the processing of the artifact MUST be specified by defining an *Arguments* element. All required inputs MUST be included in the arguments list. There are no implied arguments.
- 1189For example, there is no implication that the selected required resource instances will be passed1190with an *InstallArtifact* on the install operation. If knowledge of those selections is required,1191instance identifiers should be passed as arguments.
- 1192 When one *Argument* refers to the *OutputVariable* of another artifact, the output value must be 1193 available at the time of processing the dependent artifact.
- 1194For example, an artifact in a content element that is conditioned on the operating system being1195Linux should not refer to the output of an artifact in a content element conditioned on the1196operating system being Windows  $\mathbb{M}^3$ .
- 1197 A *Dependency* requirement MUST be defined between the content elements to indicate that the 1198 artifact that defines the output variable is a pre-requisite of the content element with the dependent 1199 artifact.
- 1200 See the ArgumentListType section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.8].
- 1201 OutputVariables: OutputVariables are variables whose values are set by artifact processing.
- 1202 *Output Variables* can also be useful in log and trace messages.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> Windows is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

- 1203 See the *OutputVariableListType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.10].
- AdditionalContent: AdditionalContent elements MUST be defined when supporting files are needed by the artifact for this operation. The content file reference is specified via the *contentRef* attribute of AdditionalContent.
- 1207 See the AdditionalContentType section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.12].
- contentRef: The value MUST be a reference to the *id* of the primary artifact file defined in a *Content* element in the package descriptor.
- 1210 Note that it is valid to have no artifact file and drive the operation from arguments alone.
- 1211 When more than one artifact file is needed, *contentRef* points to the primary artifact file and
- 1212 *AdditionalContent.contentRef* points to any other files used during application of the content element.
- 1213 When *resourceRef* is defined, *contentRef* MUST NOT be defined.
- resourceRef: Sometimes, artifact files are created during a deployment rather than being contained in the package.
- 1216 For example, some install programs create an uninstall program when the software is deployed. 1217 The uninstall program is the artifact file that is needed by the *UninstallArtifact*, but is created by, 1218 but not contained in, the package. In this case, the created artifact file is represented as a 1219 *ResultingResource*.
- 1220 An *Artifact* element that defines *resourceRef* identifies the resulting resource as its artifact file.
- 1221 When *contentRef* is defined, *resourceRef* MUST NOT be defined.
- 1222 The value MUST reference the *id* of a resource element in *Topology*.
- type: The *type* attribute identifies the format of the artifact file or files. When there is no artifact file identified, *type* MAY be left undefined. If there is an artifact file or additional files defined, *type* MUST be defined.
- Values for this attribute are not defined by this specification. *ArtifactTypeNameType* restricts *type* to
   valid xsd:QNames.
- weight: Defining weights for all artifacts and referenced packages in an SDD provides useful
   information to software that manages deployment. The weight of the artifact refers to the relative time
   taken to deploy the artifact with respect to other artifacts and referenced packages in this SDD.
- For example, if the artifact takes three times as long to deploy as another artifact whose weight is "2", then the weight would be "6". The weight numbers have no meaning in isolation and do not describe actual time elapsed. They simply provide an estimate of relative time.

# 1234 4.3.4 InstallationArtifactsType



1235

#### 1236 **Figure 22: InstallationArtifactsType structure.**

- 1237 InstallationArtifactsType provides the type definition for the Artifacts element of InstallableUnit and
- 1238 LocalizationUnit. At least one Artifact element MUST be defined. Within a CompositeInstallable definition, 1239 exactly one Artifact element MUST be defined.

### 1240 4.3.4.1 InstallationArtifactsType Property Summary

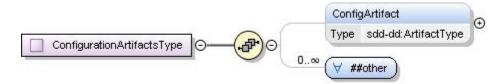
Name	Туре	*	Description	
InstallArtifact	ArtifactType	01	Artifact for install operation.	
UpdateArtifact	ArtifactType	01	Artifact for update operation.	
UndoArtifact	ArtifactType	01	Artifact for undo operation.	
UninstallArtifact	ArtifactType	01	Artifact for uninstall operation.	
RepairArtifact	ArtifactType	01	Artifact for repair operation.	
	xsd:any	0*		

### 1241 **4.3.4.2 InstallationArtifactsType Property Usage Notes**

- InstallArtifact: The InstallArtifact element declares deployment information sufficient to enable the target resource to perform an install using the named artifact files. The ResultingResource and ResultingChange elements describe the characteristics of the new or modified resource(s).
- 1245 See the *ArtifactType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.3].
- UpdateArtifact: The UpdateArtifact element declares deployment information sufficient to enable the target resource to perform an update using the named artifact files. The RequiredBase element defines the resource(s) that can be updated. The ResultingResource and ResultingChange elements describe the updated characteristics of the resource(s).
- 1250 See the *ArtifactType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.3].
- UndoArtifact: The UndoArtifact element declares deployment information sufficient to enable the target resource to undo an update. This undo will put the resource back to a previous level.

- 1253 The update that can be undone is described in the *RequiredBase* element. The *ResultingResource* 1254 definition can be used to describe the state of the resource(s) after the undo completes.
- 1255 See the *ArtifactType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.3].
- UninstallArtifact: The UninstallArtifact element declares deployment information sufficient to enable the target resource to perform an uninstall.
- 1258 If an *InstallArtifact* is defined in the same *InstallableUnit*, the *ResultingResource* element defines the 1259 resource(s) that will be uninstalled.
- When an *UninstallArtifact* is the only artifact defined for an *InstallableUnit*, the *RequiredBase* MUST
   be defined to declare the resource(s) that will be uninstalled. The *ResultingResource* element MUST
   be left blank because the result of the uninstall is that the resource(s) are removed.
- 1263 See the *ArtifactType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.3].
- Repair Artifact: The *RepairArtifact* element declares deployment information sufficient to enable the target resource to repair an installation.
- 1266 If an *InstallArtifact* is defined in the same *InstallableUnit*, the *ResultingResource* element defines the 1267 resource(s) that will be repaired.
- 1268 When a *RepairArtifact* is the only artifact defined for an *InstallableUnit*, the *RequiredBase* MUST be 1269 defined to declare the resource(s) that will be repaired.
- 1270 See the *ArtifactType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.3].

## 1271 4.3.5 ConfigurationArtifactsType



1272

### 1273 Figure 23: ConfigurationArtifactsType structure.

1274 ConfigurationArtifactsType provides the type definition for the Artifacts element of ConfigurationUnit.

### 1275 **4.3.5.1 ConfigurationArtifactsType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description	
ConfigArtifact	ArtifactType	01	Artifact for configure operation.	
	xsd:any	0*		

### 1276 **4.3.5.2 ConfigurationArtifactsType Property Usage Notes**

- ConfigArtifact: The ConfigArtifact element declares deployment information sufficient to allow the target resource to configure the resources identified in the content element's ResultingChange elements.
- 1280 See the *ArtifactType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.3].

### 1281 4.3.6 OperationListType

1282 This simple type extends the xsd:list type as defined in **[XSD]**, and adds the restriction that each 1283 value in the list must be one of the operations from the enumeration defined by *OperationType* [4.3.7].

### 1284 **4.3.7 OperationType**

1285 Operations are used in the SDD to associate requirements and completion actions with particular 1286 artifacts.

- 1287 For example, when a requirement defines an *operation* attribute with value *undo*, it is a statement that 1288 the requirement must be met prior to processing of the undo artifact.
- 1289 *OperationType* enumerates the basic resource lifecycle operations that use the content and information 1290 defined in the SDD to change the state of the resources being installed, updated, or configured.

### 1291 **4.3.7.1 OperationType Property Usage Notes**

- 1292 Attributes of *OperationType* MUST be set to one of the following values:
- 1293 **configure**: Uses the *ConfigArtifact* to perform configuration actions on a resource.
- 1294 install: Uses the InstallArtifact to install resources.
- 1295 repair: Uses the RepairArtifact to repair an installation.
- undo: Uses the UndoArtifact to restore a resource to the state before the most recent update was applied.
- update: Uses the UpdateArtifact to update an existing instance of a resource, as specified by the required base.
- use: Associates a requirement or completion action with use of the deployed software resources.
   Setting the operation attribute to *use* indicates that the requirement or completion action is not associated with an artifact.
- 1303 **uninstall**: Uses the *UninstallArtifact* to uninstall a resource.

# 1304 4.3.8 ArgumentListType

- ArgumentListType O 1... Argument Type sdd-dd:ArgumentType
- 1305

1306 **Figure 24: ArgumentListType structure.** 

- 1307 Each artifact MAY optionally include an *Arguments* element whose type is provided by *ArgumentListType*.
- 1308 This simply defines a list of *Argument* elements.

## 1309 **4.3.8.1 ArgumentListType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description	
Argument	ArgumentType	1*	An input to artifact processing.	

### 1310 4.3.8.2 ArgumentListType Property Usage Notes

- Argument: An argument value is a variable expression used to define a fixed value for the argument or to define a value in terms of one of the variables visible to the artifact.
- 1313 See the *ArgumentType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.9].

## 1314 4.3.9 ArgumentType

	@ req	uired	
	Туре	xsd:boolean	<b>⊙</b>
C	Default	true	
ArgumentType Θ	V ##0	ther	
ArgumentType $\Theta$		Name	l-dd:Element∀alueType
ArgumentType O		Name	I-dd:Element∨alueType

1315

#### 1316 Figure 25: ArgumentType structure.

1317 *ArgumentType* provides the type definition for *Argument* elements in artifacts [4.3.3]. This complex type is

1318 used to declare the argument name and optionally include a value for that argument.

### 1319 4.3.9.1 ArgumentType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
Name	ElementValueType	1	The argument name.
Value	ElementValueType	01	The argument value.
required	xsd:boolean	01	Indicates that the argument value must result in a valid expression for each particular deployment. **default value="true"
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

## 1320 4.3.9.2 ArgumentType Property Usage Notes

- Name: Evaluation of the *Name* expression produces the name of the argument. This can be useful for arguments with only a name, for example, those that are not name-value pairs.
- When the argument name alone is sufficient to communicate its meaning, the argument valueSHOULD be omitted.
- 1325 If *Name* and *Value* elements are specified, the *Name* expression MUST be a literal string.
- Additionally, a *pattern* of wildcard is not supported and MUST NOT be used with the *Name* element.
- 1327 See the *ElementValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.2].
- 1328 Value: Evaluation of the Value expression provides the value of the argument.
- 1329 The variable expression MAY be used to define a fixed value for the argument or to define a value in 1330 terms of one of the variables visible to the artifact.
- 1331A pattern of wildcard is not supported and MUST NOT be used with the Value element. See the1332ElementValueType section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.2].
- required: In cases where the argument should be ignored when the value expression is not valid for a particular deployment, set *required* to "false".

## 1335 **4.3.10 OutputVariableListType**



#### 1337 Figure 26: OutputVariableListType structure.

1338 An artifact can set variables. The variables set by the artifact are defined in the artifact's *OutputVariables*.

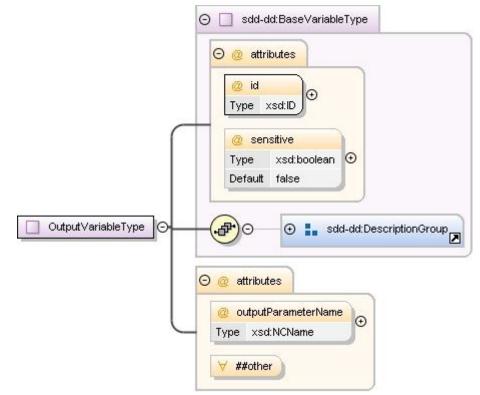
### 1339 **4.3.10.1 OutputVariableListType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
OutputVariable	OutputVariableType	1*	An output from artifact processing.

### 1340 4.3.10.2 OutputVariableListType Property Usage Notes

- 1341 **OutputVariable**: This is the definition of the variable, not a reference to a variable defined elsewhere.
- 1342 See the OutputVariableType section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.11].

### 1343 4.3.11 OutputVariableType



1344

#### 1345 Figure 27: OutputVariableType structure.

1346 Output variables are variables whose value is set by artifact processing. *OutputVariableType* extends

Base Variable Type and so has all of the attributes defined there, including an *id* attribute that is used to refer to the output variable within the SDD. Output variables can be useful in log and trace messages.

### 1349 **4.3.11.1 OutputVariableType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description

	[extends] BaseVariableType		See the BaseVariableType section for additional properties [4.6.4].
outputParameterName	xsd:NCName	01	An output from artifact processing.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

### 1350 **4.3.11.2 OutputVariableType Property Usage Notes**

1351 See the Base Variable Type section for details about the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.4].

1352 • **outputParameterName**: This is the name of the output variable as understood within the artifact

1353processing environment. The output value is associated with the output variable's *id*. The SDD author1354uses this *id* within the SDD to refer to this output value.

## 1355 4.3.12 AdditionalContentType

	<ul> <li>⊘ @ attributes</li> <li>@ contentRef Type xsd:token</li> </ul>
AdditionalContentType O	<pre>@ type Type sdd-dd:ArtifactTypeNameType</pre>
	0∞ Substitution Type sdd-dd:SubstitutionType

### 1356

#### 1357 Figure 28: AdditionalContentType structure.

When artifact processing requires more than a single file, the artifact declaration includes information
about the additional files needed. *AdditionalContentType* provides the type definition. Additional content
MAY include input files that need to be edited to include values received as input to a particular solution

1361 deployment. In this case, the additional file can include a Substitution element.

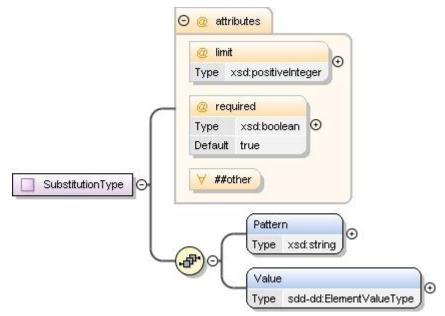
### 1362 4.3.12.1 AdditionalContentType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
Substitution	SubstitutionType	0*	A value to substitute into the file.
	xsd:any	0*	
contentRef	xsd:token	1	A reference to the content element's id defined in the package descriptor.
type	ArtifactTypeNameType	01	Type of the additional artifact file.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

### 1363 **4.3.12.2 AdditionalContentType Property Usage Notes**

- Substitution: The Substitution element supports the use of files that require some editing before they
   can be used in artifact processing. The definitions in this element support placement of values
   determined during a particular deployment into the file identified by the *contentRef* attribute.
- 1367 See the SubstitutionType section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.13].
- contentRef: The *contentRef* attribute points back to the package descriptor for information about the physical file. This value MUST match an *id* of a content element in the package descriptor.
- type: The type attribute identifies the format of the additional file. Values for this attribute are not defined by this specification. ArtifactTypeNameType restricts values of type to valid xsd:QNames.

## 1372 **4.3.13 SubstitutionType**



1373

#### 1374 **Figure 29: SubstitutionType structure.**

- 1375 *SubstitutionType* provides the type definition for the *Substitution* element in *AdditionalContent*
- declarations. It enables declaration of patterns in the file and the values that should replace the patterns
- 1377 before the file is used in artifact processing.

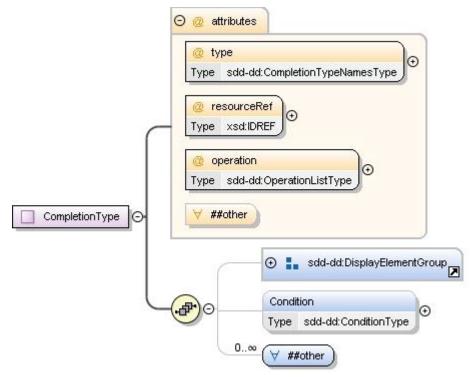
### 1378 4.3.13.1 SubstitutionType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
Pattern	xsd:string	1	The search pattern in the file that needs to be substituted.
Value	ElementValueType	1	The value to be substituted in the file.
limit	xsd:positiveInteger	01	The number of substitutions that should be made.
required	xsd:boolean	01	Indicates that substitution's value must result in a valid expression for each particular deployment. **default value="true"
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

### 1379 **4.3.13.2 SubstitutionType Property Usage Notes**

- Pattern: This is the substitution string that will be replaced with the *Value* when found in the file
   referenced by the *contentRef* attribute of the *AdditionalContent* element.
- **Value**: Evaluation of the *Value* expression results in the value that will be substituted for the pattern.
- 1383 A *pattern* of wildcard is not supported and MUST NOT be used with the *Value* element.
- 1384 See the *ElementValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.2].
- limit: If *limit* is not defined, there is no limit and all instances of the pattern found in the file will be replaced.
- required: In cases where the substitution should be ignored when the value expression is not valid for a particular deployment, set *required* to "false".

## 1389 4.3.14 CompletionType



1390

1391Figure 30: CompletionType structure.

1392 For some deployments certain completion actions such as restart and logoff are required before a

1393 deployment operation using a particular content element can be considered complete. The

1394 CompletionType elements enable the SDD author to indicate either that one of these actions is required

1395 or that one of these actions will be performed by the associated artifact.

### 1396 **4.3.14.1 CompletionType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	01	Name of the completion action.
Description	DisplayTextType	01	Description of the completion action.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	Short description of the completion action.
Condition	ConditionType	01	Conditions that determine when the completion action will be used.

	xsd:any	0*	
type	CompletionTypeNamesType	1	The type of the completion action.
resourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	The resource where the completion action will be executed.
operation	OperationListType	1	Associates a completion action with the processing of a particular artifact.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

## 1397 **4.3.14.2 CompletionType Property Usage Notes**

1007		children and the state of the s
1398 1399	•	<b>DisplayName</b> : This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it MUST provide a label for the <i>Completion</i> element.
1400		See the DisplayElementGroup section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
1401 1402	•	<b>Description, ShortDescription</b> : These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the <i>Completion</i> element.
1403		The Description element MUST be defined if the ShortDescription element is defined.
1404		See the DisplayElementGroup section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
1405 1406 1407	•	<b>Condition</b> : <i>Conditions</i> specified on resource characteristics determine if the completion action applies. If the conditions are met, the action applies. If not met, then the action is not needed. Unmet conditions are not considered a failure. When no conditions are defined, the action always applies.
1408		See the ConditionType section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
1409 1410	•	<b>type</b> : This is the completion action that applies when conditions defined in <i>ResourceConstraint</i> are met. Allowed values defined in <i>CompletionTypeNameType</i> are:
1411 1412 1413		• <b>restartRequiredImmediately</b> : A system restart is required before the deployment operation is considered complete and the artifact associated with the operation does not perform the restart. The restart MUST happen before further deployment actions are taken.
1414 1415 1416		• <b>restartRequiredBeforeUse</b> : A system restart is required before the deployment operation is considered complete and the artifact associated with the operation does not perform this action. The restart MUST happen before the associated resources are used.
1417 1418		<ul> <li>restartOccurs: The artifact associated with the lifecycle operation will initiate a system restart.</li> </ul>
1419 1420 1421 1422		<ul> <li>logoffRequired: A logoff and logon to the user account is required before the deployment operation is considered complete and the artifact associated with the operation does not perform this action. The logoff and logon MUST happen before the operation can be considered complete.</li> </ul>
1423 1424	•	<b>resourceRef</b> : This will often be the resource named as the target resource for the defining content element.
1425		The value MUST reference the <i>id</i> of a resource element in <i>Topology</i> .
1426 1427	•	<b>operation</b> : A completion action is associated with the processing of one artifact by setting <i>operation</i> to the operation associated with that artifact. The element that defines the <i>Completion</i> MUST also

define an artifact associated with the operation defined for the Completion element.

The SDD author needs to communicate constraints on resources for a variety of purposes.

See the OperationListType section for operation enumerations and their meaning [4.3.6].

Some constraints must be met for the requirements of a content element to be met. See the

1428

1429

1430 1431

1432

1433

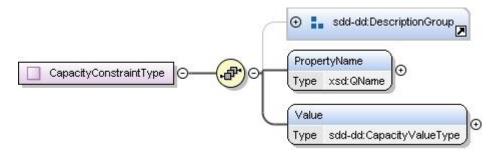
**4.4 Constraints** 

*RequirementsType* section [4.7.1].

- Other constraints must be met for a resource to serve as the required base for an update. See the *RequiredBaseType* section [4.7.8].
- Still others must be met for to satisfy a condition that determines the applicability of a content element or completion action. See the *ConditionType* section [4.5.1] and the *CompletionType* section [4.3.14].
- 1438 The *Constraint* types described in this section support identification of resource constraints in these 1439 various contexts. These types are:
- 1440 CapacityConstraint
- 1441 ConsumptionConstraint
- 1442 PropertyConstraint
- 1443 VersionConstraint
- 1444 UniquenessConstraint
- 1445 RelationshipConstraint
- 1446 AuthorizationConstraint
- 1447 All of these constraint types are constraints on a resource. There are different constraint types because 1448 there are distinct semantics for each type of constraint. Examples are:
- values within a certain range;
- one of a set of values;
- all of a set of values;
- equal to a certain value;
- no more than or no less than a certain value;
- no more than or no less than a certain value when all constraints of that type are added together.

In all cases, deployment software must be able to discover the property's value to honor the SDD author'sintent.

# 1458 **4.4.1 CapacityConstraintType**



1459

### 1460Figure 31: CapacityConstraintType structure.

- 1461 *CapacityConstraintType* provides the type definition of the *Capacity* elements of
- 1462 *RequirementResourceConstraintType* [4.7.5]. These elements are used to express a requirement on the
- capacity of a particular resource property such as memory available from an operating system. Capacity
- is shared: multiple capacity constraints expressed on the same property are evaluated individually without
- assuming any change to the available quantity of the property.

### 1466 **4.4.1.1 CapacityConstraintType Property Summary**

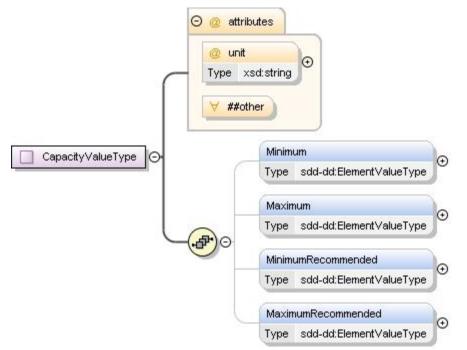
Name	Туре	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	01	A description of the capacity constraint. Required if ShortDescription is defined.

ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	A short description of the capacity constraint.
PropertyName	xsd:QName	1	Name of the constrained property.
Value	CapacityValueType	1	Bounds on the value of the constrained property.

### 1467 **4.4.1.2 CapacityConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

- Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the capacity constraint on the resource.
- 1470 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 1471 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- PropertyName: This name corresponds to the name of the constrained resource property in the environment. This name may be specified in profiles [5.3].
- Value: Value specifies the bound and optional recommended bound on the resource property identified in the *PropertyName* element.
- 1476 See the *CapacityValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.2].

# 1477 **4.4.2 CapacityValueType**



1478

- 1479 **Figure 32: CapacityValueType structure.**
- 1480 Capacity value is expressed in terms of a minimum or maximum capacity. *CapacityValueType* provides
- 1481 the elements that support this expression. It also supports expression of a recommended minimum or
- 1482 maximum capacity.

## 1483 **4.4.2.1 CapacityValueType Property Summary**

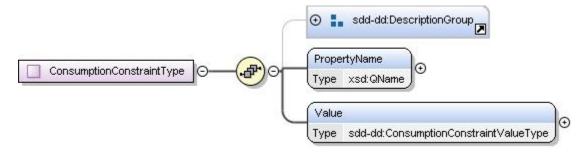
Name	Туре	*	Description
Minimum	ElementValueType	01	Minimum capacity.
Maximum	ElementValueType	01	Maximum capacity.

MinimumRecommended	ElementValueType	01	Minimum recommended capacity.
MaximumRecommended	ElementValueType	01	Maximum recommended capacity.
unit	xsd:string	01	Unit of measure used to interpret the capacity value.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

## 1484 **4.4.2.2 CapacityValueType Property Usage Notes**

- 1485 **Minimum:** There will usually be either a minimum value or a maximum value defined, but not both. 1486 When minimum is specified, the actual value of the capacity property MUST be equal to or greater 1487 than the minimum value. 1488 A pattern of wildcard is not supported and MUST NOT be used with the *Minimum* element. 1489 See the *ElementValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.2]. 1490 Maximum: When specified, the actual value of the capacity property MUST be less than or equal to the defined maximum. 1491 1492 If Minimum and Maximum are both defined, Minimum MUST be less than or equal to Maximum. 1493 A pattern of wildcard is not supported and MUST NOT be used with the Maximum element. 1494 See the *ElementValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.2]. 1495 **MinimumRecommended:** The SDD author can indicate a preferred, but not required, minimum by defining a value for this element. A pattern of wildcard is not supported and MUST NOT be used with 1496 1497 the MinimumRecommended element.
- 1498 See the *ElementValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.2].
- MaximumRecommended: The SDD author can indicate a preferred, but not required, maximum by defining a value for this element.
- 1501If MinimumRecommended and MaximumRecommended are both defined, MinimumRecommended1502MUST be less than or equal to MaximumRecommended.
- 1503 A *pattern* of wildcard is not supported and MUST NOT be used with the *MaximumRecommended* 1504 element.
- 1505 See the *ElementValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.2].
- unit: Values for *unit* SHOULD be well-known units of measure from the International System of Units
   [UNIT]. A unit of measure SHOULD be specified for all properties that are measured in any kind of
   unit.

# 1509 **4.4.3 ConsumptionConstraintType**



1510

### 1511 Figure 33: ConsumptionConstraintType structure.

- 1512 ConsumptionConstraintType provides the type definition of the Consumption elements of
- 1513 *RequirementResourceConstraintType* [4.7.5]. These elements are used to express a requirement on the
- 1514 available quantity of a particular resource property such as disk space on a file system.
- 1515 *ConsumptionConstraints* represent exclusive use of the defined quantity of the resource property. In other 1516 words, consumption constraints are additive, with each consumption constraint specified in the SDD

- adding to the total requirement for the specified resource(s). A consumption constraint is assumed to alter the available quantity such that the portion of the property used to satisfy one constraint is not available to satisfy another consumption constraint on the same property.
- For example, suppose that the target file system has 80 megabytes available. The application of a
- 1521 content element's *InstallArtifact* results in installation of files that use 5 megabytes of file space. The 1522 application of a second *InstallArtifact* results in installation of files that use 2 megabytes of file space.
- 1523 Consumption constraints are additive, so the total space used for this content element is 7
- 1524 megabytes, leaving 73 (80–7) megabytes available on the target file system.

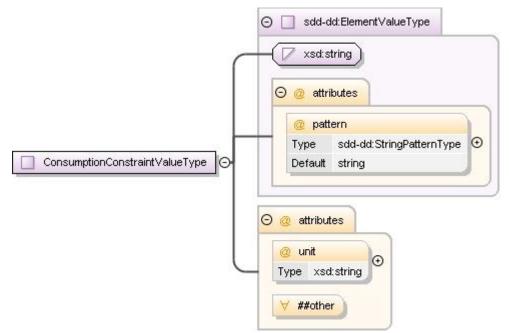
## 1525 **4.4.3.1 ConsumptionConstraintType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	01	A description of the consumption constraint. Required if ShortDescription is defined.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	A short description of the consumption constraint.
PropertyName	xsd:QName	1	Names the resource property to test.
Value	ConsumptionConstraintValueType	1	A variable expression defining the minimum available quantity.

## 1526 **4.4.3.2 ConsumptionConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

- Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the consumption constraint on the resource.
- 1529 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 1530 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- PropertyName: The property name can be used to find the property value in the deployment environment. This name may be specified in profiles [5.3].
- Value: The result of evaluating this variable expression represents the minimum quantity of the
   named resource property that MUST be available for successful deployment of the defining content
   element's artifacts. This quantity will be consumed by application of the associated artifact.
- 1536 See the *ConsumptionConstraintValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.4].

## 1537 **4.4.4 ConsumptionConstraintValueType**



1538

### 1539 Figure 34: ConsumptionConstraintValueType structure.

1540 A consumption value is defined using a variable expression. *ConsumptionConstraintValueType* provides 1541 the variable expression by extending *ElementValueType*.

### 1542 **4.4.4.1 ConsumptionConstraintValueType Property Summary**

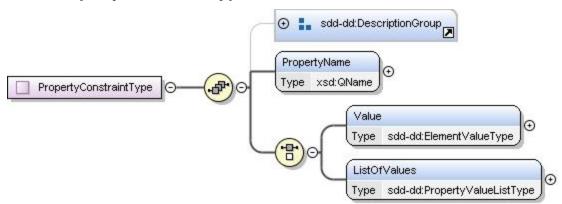
Name	Туре	*	Description
	[extends] ElementValueType		See the ElementValueType section for additional properties [4.6.2].
unit	xsd:string	01	Unit of measure used to interpret the consumption value.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

## 1543 **4.4.4.2 ConsumptionConstraintValueType Property Usage Notes**

1544 See the *ElementValueType* section for details about the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.2].

- 1545 unit: Values for *unit* SHOULD be well-known units of measure from International System of Units
- 1546 **[UNIT]**. A unit of measure SHOULD be specified for all properties which are measured in any kind of unit.

## 1548 4.4.5 PropertyConstraintType



1549

### 1550 **Figure 35: PropertyConstraintType structure.**

- 1551 *PropertyConstraintType* provides the type definition of the *Property* elements of
- 1552 RequirementResourceConstraintType [4.7.5]. It supports definition of a required value or set of

1553 acceptable values for a particular resource property.

### 1554 **4.4.5.1 PropertyConstraintType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	01	A description of the property constraint. Required if ShortDescription is defined.
ShortDescription	escription DisplayTextType 01		A short description of the property constraint.
PropertyName	xsd:QName	1	Name of the constrained property.
Value	ElementValueType	01	Required property value.
ListOfValues	PropertyValueListType	01	List of required property values.

## 1555 **4.4.5.2 PropertyConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

- Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the property constraint on the resource.
- 1558 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 1559 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- PropertyName: The property name can be used to find the property value in the deployment environment. This name may be specified in profiles [5.3].
- Value: The result of evaluating the Value expression represents the required value of the named resource property.
- 1564 See the *ElementValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.2].
- **ListOfValues**: A list of required values can be defined in place of a single required value.
- 1566 See the *PropertyValueListType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.6].

## 1567 4.4.6 PropertyValueListType

	@ mat	ch	١.
	Туре	sdd-dd:PropertyMatchType	Ð
	Default	any	J.
pertyValueListType⊖	∀ ##ot	ther	

1568

#### 1569 Figure 36: PropertyValueListType structure.

1570 A property value list is expressed as one or more strings representing valid values for the property.

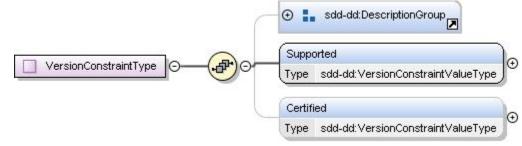
### 1571 **4.4.6.1 PropertyValueListType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
Value	ElementValueType	1*	A property value.
match	PropertyMatchType	01	Determines whether the actual property value must match any or all of the listed values. **default value="any"
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

## 1572 4.4.6.2 PropertyValueListType Property Usage Notes

- Value: The result of the Value expression represents one possible required value of the named resource property.
- 1575 See the *ElementValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.2].
- match: The value or values of the property found in the deployment environment are compared to the value or values listed in the property constraint. *PropertyMatchType* defines two enumerated values: any and all. When match is set to any, the property constraint is considered met when any one of the found property values matches any one of the declared property values. When match is set to all, the constraint is considered met when all of the declared property values match values found for the property.

## 1582 4.4.7 VersionConstraintType



1583

#### 1584 **Figure 37: VersionConstraintType structure.**

1585 *VersionConstraintType* provides the type definition of the *VersionConstraint* elements of

1586 *RequirementResourceConstraintType* [4.7.5]. A *VersionConstraint* can define a set of individual versions 1587 or ranges of versions that are supported and a similar set that are certified. During deployment, the set of 1588 certified versions, if provided, will be resolved and if successful, prioritized first. If the version constraint is 1589 still unmet after processing the certified versions, then the supported versions will be resolved.

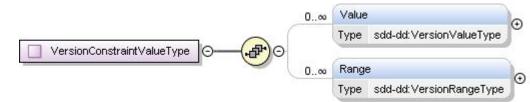
Name	Туре	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	01	A description of the version constraint. Required if ShortDescription is defined.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	A short description of the version constraint.
Supported	VersionConstraintValueType	1	A supported version or set of versions.
Certified	VersionConstraintValueType	01	A subset of the supported versions that are certified as tested.

## 1590 **4.4.7.1 VersionConstraintType Property Summary**

### 1591 4.4.7.2 VersionConstraintType Property Usage Notes

- Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the version constraint on the resource.
- 1594 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 1595 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- **Supported**: If the version of a resource is in the *Supported* set, it meets the requirements.
- 1597 See the VersionConstraintValueType section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.8].
- Certified: In some cases the set of required versions may be different from the set of versions that are certified by the manufacturer as thoroughly tested. Version(s) declared as *Certified* MUST be a subset of the version(s) declared as *Supported*.
- 1601 See the *VersionConstraintValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.8].

## 1602 **4.4.8 VersionConstraintValueType**



1603

### 1604 **Figure 38: VersionConstraintValueType structure.**

1605 A version constraint can be specified using any number of individual version values in combination with 1606 any number of version ranges.

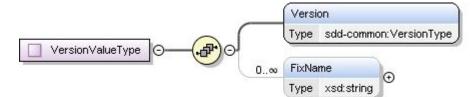
## 1607 **4.4.8.1 VersionConstraintValueType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
Value	VersionValueType	0*	A version value with associated fixes specified.
Range	VersionRangeType	0*	A range of version values with associated fixes specified for each range.

## 1608 **4.4.8.2 VersionConstraintValueType Property Usage Notes**

- Value: Discrete version values can be defined when the set of required versions includes versions that do not fall within a range. There is no assumption by this specification that version values are numerically comparable. The method of comparing version values may be resource-specific.
- 1612 See the Version Value Type section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.9].
- 1613 Range: See the VersionRangeType section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.10].

### 1614 **4.4.9 VersionValueType**



#### 1615

1616 Figure 39: VersionValueType structure.

1617 A version value includes a version and a list of required fixes associated with that version.

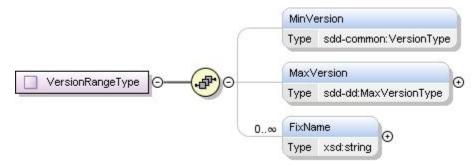
### 1618 4.4.9.1 VersionValueType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
Version	VersionType	1	An allowable version value.
FixName	xsd:string	0*	The name of a fix.

### 1619 4.4.9.2 VersionValueType Property Usage Notes

- Version: A string containing a single, exact version value. This is compared with the version value of specific resource instances. Only equal values satisfy this part of the constraint.
- 1622 See the *VersionType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.10].
- FixName: Any number of *FixName* elements can be defined; identifying fixes that must be discovered to be applied for the version constraint to be considered met.

### 1625 **4.4.10 VersionRangeType**



1626

#### 1627 **Figure 40: VersionRangeType structure.**

- 1628 A VersionRange is specified with a minimum and maximum version value and a list of required fixes
- 1629 associated with that range. The method of comparing version strings in a version range is resource-1630 specific.

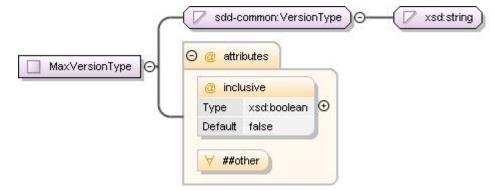
### 1631 **4.4.10.1 VersionRangeType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
MinVersion	VersionType	01	The least allowable version value.
MaxVersion	MaxVersionType	01	The greatest allowable version value.
FixName	xsd:string	0*	The name of a fix.

### 1632 **4.4.10.2 VersionRangeType Property Usage Notes**

- MinVersion: This is the lower bound of a version range. If *MinVersion* is defined but *MaxVersion* is not, there is no upper bound. A version that is equal to *MinVersion* is within the defined range.
- 1635 See the VersionType section for structure and additional usage details [3.10].
- MaxVersion: This is the upper bound of a version range. If *MaxVersion* is defined but *MinVersion* is not, there is no lower bound. A version that is equal to *MaxVersion* may be within the defined range depending on the value specified for the *inclusive* attribute.
- 1639 See the *MaxVersionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.11].
- FixName: Any number of *FixNames* can be defined identifying fixes that must be found to be applied for the version constraint is to be considered satisfied. This is true for all versions within the defined range.
- 1643 When *FixName* is defined, either a *MinVersion* or a *MaxVersion* element MUST also be defined.

## 1644 4.4.11 MaxVersionType



### 1646 Figure 41: MaxVersionType structure.

1645

1647 A maximum version can be inclusive or exclusive.

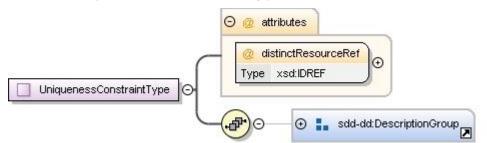
### 1648 4.4.11.1 MaxVersionType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
	[extends] VersionType		See the VersionType section for additional properties [3.10].
inclusive	xsd:boolean	01	Indicates whether the max version value is included in the supported range of versions. **default value="false"
	xsd:any	0*	

### 1649 **4.4.11.2 MaxVersionType Property Usage Notes**

1650 See the VersionType section for details about the inherited attributes and elements [3.10].

- inclusive: The inclusive attribute allows the SDD author to choose the semantics of maximum 1651 version. Supported ranges are often everything equal to or greater than the minimum version and up 1652 1653 to, but not including, the maximum version. Sometimes it is more convenient for the range to include 1654 the maximum version.
- 4.4.12 UniquenessConstraintType 1655



#### 1656

#### 1657 Figure 42: UniquenessConstraintType structure.

- 1658 A UniquenessConstraint is used to indicate when two resources defined in topology MUST or MUST NOT resolve to the same resource instance during a particular deployment. A UniquenessConstraint indicates 1659 1660 that the two resources MUST NOT be the same when it is defined in a ResourceConstraint element with testValue="true". A UniquenessConstraint indicates that the two resources MUST be the same when 1661 defined in a ResourceConstraint with testValue="false".
- 1662
- 1663 When no UniquenessConstraint is in scope for a particular pair of resources, the two resources MAY 1664 resolve to the same resource when their identifying characteristics are the same and when all in-scope constraints on both resources are satisfied. 1665
- The first of the pair of resources is identified in the resourceRef attribute of the ResourceConstraint 1666
- 1667 element that defines the UniquenessConstraint. The second of the pair is identified in the
- 1668 distinctResourceRef attribute of the UniquenessConstraint.

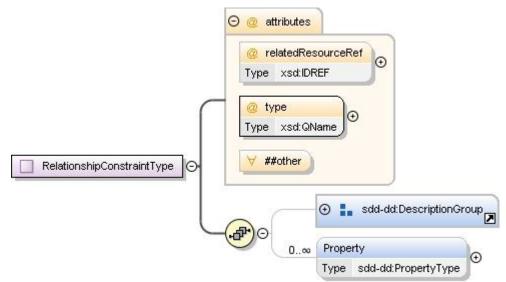
#### 1669 4.4.12.1 UniquenessConstraintType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
Description DisplayTextType 01		01	A description of the uniqueness constraint, for example what must or must not be unique and why.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	A short description of the uniqueness constraint.
distinctResourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	One of the pair of resources referred to by the constraint.

#### 4.4.12.2 UniquenessConstraintType Property Usage Notes 1670

- 1671 **Description**, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the uniqueness constraint on the resource. 1672
- 1673 The Description element MUST be defined if the ShortDescription element is defined.
- 1674 See the DescriptionGroup section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- 1675 distinctResourceRef: The second resource in the pair of resources.
- The value MUST reference the *id* of a resource element in *Topology*. 1676

### 1677 4.4.13 RelationshipConstraintType



1678

1679 **Figure 43: RelationshipConstraintType structure.** 

A *RelationshipConstraint* identifies a particular relationship between two resources that is constrained in some way by the SDD. The value of the *testValue* attribute of the *ResourceConstraint* that contains the *RelationshipConstraint* determines whether the constraint MUST be satisfied or MUST NOT be satisfied.

1683 The first resource of the pair is defined by the *resourceRef* attribute of the *ResourceConstraint* containing 1684 the *RelationshipConstraint*.

### 1685 **4.4.13.1 RelationshipConstraintType Property Summary**

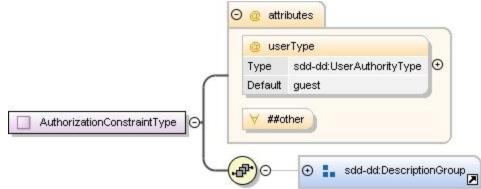
Name	Туре	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	01	A description of the relationship and its purpose in the overall solution.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	A short description of the relationship.
Property	PropertyType	0*	A property constraint that further constrains the relationship.
relatedResourceRef	xsd:IDREF	01	The second resource in the relationship.
type	xsd:QName	1	The type of the relationship.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

### 1686 **4.4.13.2 RelationshipConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

- Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the relationship constraint on the resource.
- 1689 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 1690 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- 1691 Property: This element MAY be used to provide additional constraints on the relationship.
- 1692For example, a connectivity relationship might specify additional information such as the specific1693protocol used (for instance, TCP/IP) and/or particular characteristics of a protocol (for instance,1694port number).
- 1695 See the *PropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.3].

- relatedResourceRef: Naming the second resource is optional. When it is not named, the relationship constraint is satisfied if the first resource has the defined relationship with any other resource.
- 1698 When it is named, the value MUST reference the *id* of a resource element in *Topology*.
- 1699 **type**: Values for relationship type are not defined by the SDD specification.

### 1700 **4.4.14 AuthorizationConstraintType**



1701
1702 Figure 44: AuthorizationConstraintType structure.

- An *AuthorizationConstraint* enables the SDD author to declare the level of authority that is required by the target resource in order to deploy the content that is described by the SDD.
- For example, if the referenced resource for which this contraint applies is an operating system—the SDD author would use this constraint to declare that root authority is required. This pattern similarly applies to databases, application servers, etc.

### 1708 **4.4.14.1 AuthorizationConstraintType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	01	A description of the authorization level and its purpose in the overall solution.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	A short description of the authorization level.
userType	UserAuthorityType	01	The type of the authority, for example, "guest" or "root". **default value="guest".
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

### 1709 **4.4.14.2 AuthorizationConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

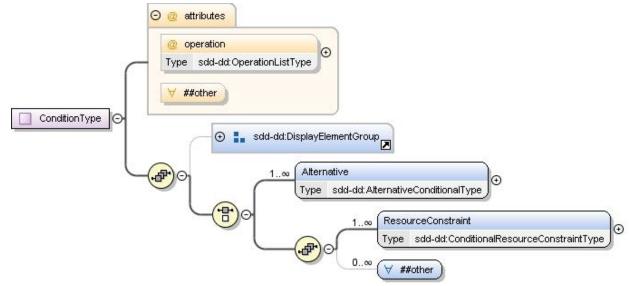
- Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the authorization constraint on the resource.
- 1712 The Description element MUST be defined if the ShortDescription element is defined.
- 1713 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- userType: If specified, the *userType* attribute designates the level of authority required by the referenced resource.
- For example, setting the *userType* to "guest" implies that the resource does not need a level of authoritization higher than a common user. However, if *userType* is set to "root", the resource requires an elevated level of administrative authority in order to successfully function.

## 1719 **4.5 Conditions**

1720 Conditions are expressed on characteristics of resources in the deployment environment. Conditions are
1721 used to indicate when particular elements of the SDD are applicable, or when they should be ignored.
1722 Conditions are not requirements. Failure to satisfy a condition does not indicate a failure; it simply means
1723 the conditioned element should be ignored. Conditions are used to:

- 1724 determine if a content element is applicable
- 1725 choose from among values for a variable
- 1726 determine when a feature is applicable
- 1727 determine when a particular result is applicable
- 1728 determine if a particular completion action is necessary.
- Because conditions are always based on the characteristics of resources, they are expressed usingresource constraints.

### 1731 **4.5.1 ConditionType**



#### 1732

#### 1733 Figure 45: ConditionType structure.

1734 ConditionType allows expression of the particular resource characteristics that must be true for the
 1735 condition to be considered met. These are resource characteristics that may vary from one particular
 1736 deployment to another.

- For example, one deployment using the SDD might use one version of an application server and a
  different deployment might use a different version. The differences in the version might be great
  enough to:
- select among content elements.
- 1741For example, one content element has an artifact for a Web application that works in a1742particular version and a different content element has an artifact for a later version of the1743same Web application.
- select among variable values.
- For example, the default installation path on one operating system may be different from the default install path on another operating system.
- select among completion actions.
- 1748 For example, a reboot may be required when deploying on one operating system but not 1749 another.

### 1750 **4.5.1.1 ConditionType Property Summary**

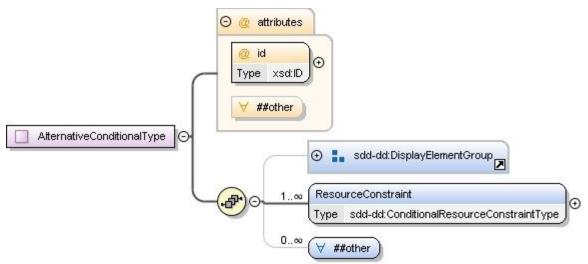
Name	Туре	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	01	Name of the condition.
Description	DisplayTextType	01	Description of the condition.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	Short description of the condition.
Alternative	AlternativeConditionalType	0*	An alternative set of resource constraints.
ResourceConstraint	ConditionalResourceConstraintType	0*	A set of constraints on one resource.
	xsd:any	0*	
operation	OperationListType	01	The condition applies only when processing the artifact associated with this operation.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

### 1751 **4.5.1.2 ConditionType Property Usage Notes**

1752 1753	•	<b>DisplayName</b> : This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it MUST provide a label for the condition.
1754		See the DisplayElementGroup section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
1755 1756	•	<b>Description, ShortDescription</b> : These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the condition.
1757		The Description element MUST be defined if the ShortDescription element is defined.
1758		See the DisplayElementGroup section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
1759 1760	•	Alternative: When a condition can be satisfied in multiple ways, two or more <i>Alternative</i> elements are defined.
1761 1762		As a convenience for tooling that produces SDDs, it is also possible to define a single <i>Alternative</i> . This is semantically identical to directly defining <i>ResourceConstraints</i> .
1763		To meet a condition, at least one of the specified Alternatives must be satisfied.
1764		See the AlternativeConditionalType section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.2].
1765 1766	•	<b>ResourceConstraint</b> : When a condition can be satisfied in only one way, constraints MAY be defined directly under <i>Condition</i> or in a single <i>Alternative</i> element.
1767 1768		Constraints are defined using a sequence of <i>ResourceConstraints</i> . Every constraint in the sequence must be met for the condition to be met.
1769		See the ConditionalResourceConstraintType section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.3].
1770 1771 1772	•	<b>operation</b> : In a singleton atomic content element, a condition MAY be associated with application of one or more artifacts. The association is made by setting the <i>operation</i> attribute to the operations associated with those artifacts.

- 1773 Conditions defined for CompositeInstallable and for atomic content elements defined within a
- 1774 CompositeInstallable SHOULD NOT define operation. If the operation is defined for a
- 1775 CompositeInstallable Condition, it MUST be set to the operation defined in the CompositeInstallable's
   1776 operation attribute. If operation is defined for an atomic content element's Condition, it MUST be set
- 1777 to the operation associated with the single artifact defined by the atomic content element.
- 1778 When *operation* is not specified, the condition applies to the processing of all artifacts.
- 1779 See the *OperationListType* section for *operation* enumerations and their meaning [4.3.6].

### 1780 4.5.2 AlternativeConditionalType



1781

### 1782 Figure 46: AlternativeConditionalType structure.

1783 When a condition can be met in more than one way, alternative sets of conditional resource constraints 1784 can be defined. *AlternativeConditionalType* provides the type definition for these elements.

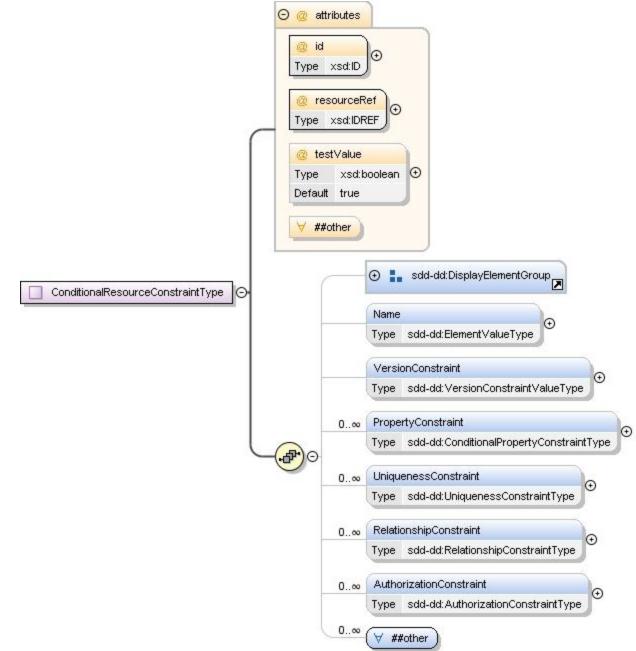
### 1785 4.5.2.1 AlternativeConditionalType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	01	Name of the alternative.
Description	DisplayTextType	01	Description for the alternative.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	Short description of the alternative.
ResourceConstraint	ConditionalResourceConstraintType	1*	A set of constraints on one resource.
	xsd:any	0*	
id	xsd:IDREF	1	Identifier for the alternative that is unique within the deployment descriptor.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

### 1786 **4.5.2.2 AlternativeConditionalType Property Usage Notes**

- DisplayName: This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it
   MUST provide a label for the alternative condition.
- 1789 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the alternative condition.
- 1792 The Description element MUST be defined if the ShortDescription element is defined.
- 1793 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- **ResourceConstraint**: All constraints defined in the individual *Alternative* MUST be met for the *Alternative* condition to evaluate to true.
- 1796 See the *ConditionalResourceConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.3].
- id: The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating log and trace messages.

### 1799 4.5.3 ConditionalResourceConstraintType



1800

### 1801 Figure 47: ConditionalResourceConstraintType structure.

1802 ConditionalResourceConstraintType provides the type definitions for ResourceConstraint elements used
 1803 in conditions. These constraints do not represent requirements for deployment. Instead, they identify the
 1804 resource characteristics associated with a condition. Version, property and the existence or absence of
 1805 the resource can be specified with a resource constraint used in a condition.

For example, an SDD author might want to deploy a specific artifact to Windows XP operating systems but not to other Windows operating systems. To accomplish this, a *ResourceConstraint* that includes a *VersionConstraint* that identifies the OS version that matches Windows XP is included with the *InstallableUnit* for that specific artifact. At runtime, if the OS version matches, the condition is met and the artifact is deployed; otherwise, it is skipped.

### 1811 **4.5.3.1 ConditionalResourceConstraintType Property Summary**

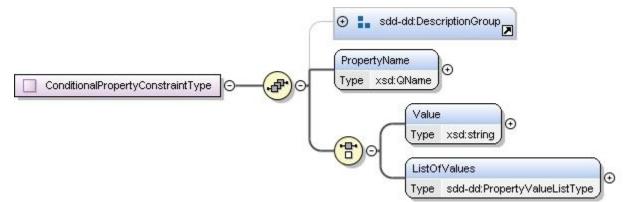
Name	Туре	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	01	Name of the resource constraint.
Description	DisplayTextType	01	Description for the resource constraint.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	Short description of the resource constraint.
Name	VariableExpressionType	<del>01</del>	Name of the resource constraint. [DEPRECATED in SDD v2.0]
VersionConstraint	VersionConstraintValueType	01	A resource version set.
PropertyConstraint	ConditionalPropertyConstraintType	0*	A resource property name and required value.
UniquenessConstraint	UniquenessConstraintType	0*	A required mapping of two resources in the topology to unique instances in the deployment environment.
RelationshipConstraint	RelationshipConstraintType	0*	A required relationship between the resource identified in the resourceRef and another resource in the topology.
AuthorizationConstraint	AuthorizationConstraintType	0*	A required authorization level for a resource.
	xsd:any	0*	
id	xsd:ID	1	Identifier for the resource constraint that is unique within the deployment descriptor.
resourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	The resource to which the conditions apply.
testValue	xsd:boolean	01	The result of evaluating the contained constraints, which will result in the ResourceConstraint being met. **default value="true"
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

### 1812 4.5.3.2 ConditionalResourceConstraintType Property Usage Notes

- DisplayName: This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it
   MUST provide a label for the resource constraint.
- 1815 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 1816 Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the resource constraint.
- 1818 The Description element MUST be defined if the ShortDescription element is defined.
- 1819 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- Name: The name of the resource identified by *resourceRef*. If the resource name is defined in topology it SHOULD NOT be defined here. If it is defined in both places, the one defined in the condition is used when evaluating the condition.
- 1823 See the VariableExpressionType section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 1824 [Starting with SDD v2.0, Name has been deprecated.]
- VersionConstraint: The actual version of the resource MUST be one of the set of versions defined here for the version condition to be considered met.
- 1827 See the VersionConstraintValueType section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.8].

- PropertyConstraint: The actual value of the property MUST match the value defined here for the condition to be considered met.
- 1830 See the *ConditionalPropertyConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.4].
- UniquenessConstraint: UniquenessConstraint elements are used in ResourceConstraints to
   indicate when two resources defined in topology MUST or MUST NOT resolve to the same resource
   instance during a particular deployment.
- 1834 See the *UniquenessConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.12].
- RelationshipConstraint: *RelationshipConstraint* elements are used in *ResourceConstraints* to indicate a constraint on a particular relationship between resources.
- 1837 See the *RelationshipConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.13].
- AuthorizationConstraint: AuthorizationConstraint elements are used in ResourceConstraints to
   indicate a required level of authorization required by a resource in order to deploy the content that is
   described by the SDD.
- 1841 See the AuthorizationConstraintType section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.14].
- id: The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating log and trace messages.
- resourceRef: The version and property constraints defined here all apply to the one resource
   specification in topology identified by this attribute.
- 1846 The value MUST reference the *id* of that resource element in *Topology*.
- testValue: When the result of evaluating all of the constraints defined in the *ResourceConstraint* matches the value of *testValue*, the *ResourceConstraint* is considered met.
- 1849 When no version or property constraints are defined, and *testValue* is "true", the constraint is met if 1850 the resource exists as defined in topology.
- 1851 When no version or property constraints are defined, and *testValue* is "false", the constraint is met if 1852 the resource, as defined in topology, does not exist.

### 1853 **4.5.4 ConditionalPropertyConstraintType**



1854

#### 1855 Figure 48: ConditionalPropertyConstraintType structure.

- 1856 ConditionalPropertyConstraintType provides the type definition for a PropertyConstraint included within
- 1857 Alternatives specified in Condition elements. The ConditionalPropertyConstraintType is very similar to the
- 1858 *PropertyConstraintType*; the only difference is that the *Value* element defined in the
- 1859 ConditionalPropertyConstraintType is of type xsd:string which is less restrictive than the Value
- 1860 element defined in the *PropertyConstraintType* which is of *ElementValueType*.

### 1861 4.5.4.1 ConditionalPropertyConstraintType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description

Description	DisplayTextType	01	A description of the property constraint. Required if ShortDescription is defined.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	A short description of the property constraint.
PropertyName	xsd:QName	1	Name of the constrained property.
Value	xsd:string	01	Required property value.
ListOfValues	PropertyValueListType	01	List of required property values.

### 1862 **4.5.4.2 ConditionalPropertyConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

- Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the *PropertyConstraint* element.
- 1865 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 1866 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- PropertyName: The property name can be used to find the property value in the deployment environment. The name may be defined in a profile [5.3].
- Value: In a condition, the value used in a property constraint is a string rather than a variable expression.
- **ListOfValues**: A list of required values can be defined in place of a single required value.
- 1872 See the *PropertyValueListType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.6].

### 1873 **4.6 Variables**

Variables provide a means to associate user inputs, resource property values, fixed strings and values derived from these with input arguments for artifacts and with constraints on resources. Three types of variables can be defined in an SDD. *Parameter* is a variable whose value is expected to be received as input to the deployment process. *ResourceProperty* is a variable whose value is set from the property of a specific instance of a resource during a particular solution deployment. *DerivedVariable* is exactly what its name indicates; it is a variable that is derived from values defined elsewhere in the descriptor or in the environment.

- A variable is considered defined if it has a value provided, even if that value is the empty string. A variable
  expression is considered valid if it contains no variable references, or if all contained variable references
  are defined.
- 1884 Specifically, a *ResourceProperty* variable is undefined when the resource does not participate in the 1885 particular deployment or when the specified property has no value. A *Parameter* variable is undefined 1886 when it has no default value and has no value provided by the deployer. A *DerivedVariable* that uses 1887 *ConditionalExpression* elements is undefined when none of its conditions evaluates to true, or the 1888 selected condition's value expression is not valid. A *DerivedVariable* that uses an unconditioned
- 1889 *Expression* is undefined when its value expression is undefined.
- 1890 To avoid an undefined *Parameter* variable, default parameter values may be used. To avoid an undefined
- 1891 *ResourceProperty* variable, replace references to the *ResourceProperty* variable with references to a
- 1892 Derived Variable defined to provide a default value in cases where the ResourceProperty is undefined.
- 1893 This *DerivedVariable* would define one expression, conditioned on the resource, that refers to the 1894 *ResourceProperty* variable and another, low priority, catch-all expression that defines the desired
- 1894 *ResourceProperty* variable and another, low priority, catch-all expression that defines the desired 1895 "default" value. Note that the default value in either of these cases MAY be an empty string, for example,
- 1896 "". An empty string acts just like any other defined variable value. When the provided value of a variable is
- 1897 an empty string, the variable reference in a variable expression is replaced by an empty string.

### 1898 **4.6.1 VariableExpressionType**

1899 Variable expressions allow the value of a variable to be used as all, or part of, the value of some other 1900 SDD element. A variable expression is a string that can include a reference to a variable. The string is evaluated by replacing all references to variables with the value of the variable. A variable reference is avariable id placed inside parentheses preceded by a dollar sign.

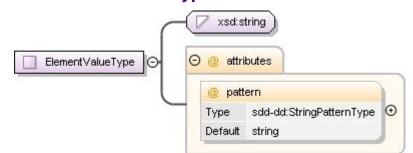
For example, the variable expression "C:\Program Files\\$(InstallDirectory)" resolves to "C:\Program Files\Acme Software Product" if the value of the variable with the id "InstallDirectory" has the value "Acme Software Product".

1906 The value of a variable that is replaced into a variable expression can itself have a variable reference.

1907 This reference is resolved before using the value. This nesting of variable expressions is unlimited. Any

1908 number of variable references can be used in a variable expression. If a variable expression string does 1909 not contain a variable reference, it is used as is.

### 1910 **4.6.2 ElementValueType**



1911

#### 1912 **Figure 49: ElementValueType structure.**

1913 *ElementValueType* provides a string value and a processing hint to the runtime necessary for proper

1914 handling the string. This provides the author with flexibility when specifying string values, so that literals

and expressions are interpreted as the author intended. See [SDDP] and [SDDEX] for examples using

1916 the *ElementValueType*.

### 1917 **4.6.2.1 ElementValueType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
	[extends] xsd:string		See the xsd:string definition in <b>[XSD].</b>
pattern	StringPatternType	01	The format of the specified value indicating how the string should be interpreted at runtime. **default value="string"

### 1918 4.6.2.2 ElementValueType Property Usage Notes

1919 See the xsd:string definition in **[XSD]** for inherited attributes and elements.

- 1920 **pattern**: The value of *pattern* MUST be one of the enumerations provided by *StringPatternType*.
- 1921In some expressions of *ElementValueType*, wildcards logically do not make sense. A usage note is1922provided if an element does not support a *pattern* of wildcard.
- 1923 See the *StringPatternType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.3].

### 1924 **4.6.3 StringPatternType**

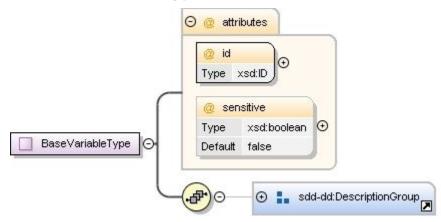
1925 *StringPatternType* provides an enumeration of the possible patterns for runtime processing of string values specified in elements of *ElementValueType*.

### 1927 4.6.3.1 StringPatternType Property Usage Notes

- 1928 Attributes of *StringPatternType* MUST be set to one of the following values:
- 1929 **string**: The value specified will be treated as a case insensitive string.

- 1930 **literal**: The value specified will be treated as a case sensitive string.
- variableReference: The value specified will be treated as a variable expression and string resolution
   will be performed.
- wildcard: The value specified will be processed as a type of regular expression, where "\*" is the preferred wildcard character.
- For example, a *PropertyType* element might have a *Value* that can either match "Oracle 9iAS" or "Oracle 10". In order to indicate that either is an acceptible match, specify the expression value as "Oracle\*", and set pattern="wildcard".
- 1938 In some expressions of *ElementValueType*, wildcards logically do not make sense. A usage note is provided if an element does not support a *pattern* of wildcard.

### 1940 4.6.4 BaseVariableType



#### 1941

#### 1942 Figure 50: BaseVariableType structure.

- 1943 Base Variable Type is the base type of the Derived Variable and Resource Property elements defined by
- 1944 *VariablesType* [4.6.5]. It provides the *id* attribute, which is used to reference the variable in a variable 1945 expression.

#### 1945 expression

### 1946 4.6.4.1 BaseVariableType Property Summary

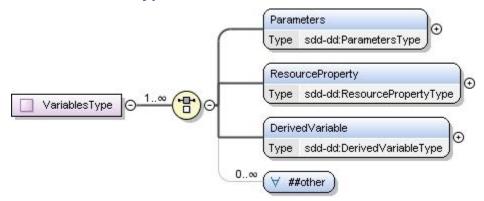
Name	Туре	*	Description	
Description	DisplayTextType	01	Description of the variable.	
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	Short description of the variable.	
id	xsd:ID	1	Identifier used for referencing the variable within the descriptor.	
sensitive	xsd:boolean	01	A "true" value indicates the variable contains sensitive data.	
			**default value="false"	

### 1947 **4.6.4.2 BaseVariableType Property Usage Notes**

- Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the variable.
- 1950 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 1951 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- id: Variables may be referenced in deployment descriptor elements of type VariableExpression within
   the scope of the variable. The scope of the variable includes the content element where defined and
   all nested content elements. Variables defined in the top level content element are also visible in

- 1955 *Topology*. The *Variable* is referenced by placing the variable *id* within parentheses preceded by a dollar sign.
- 1957For example, a variable with *id* value "InstallLocation" is referenced with the string1958"\$(InstallLocation)".
- 1959The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating1960log and trace messages.
- sensitive: The sensitive attribute provides an indication of whether the data within a variable is likely to be considered sensitive. User name and password are examples of data that may be considered sensitive.
- 1964 For example, *sensitive* data typically would not be displayed in a user interface, written to a log 1965 file, stored without protection, or in any way made visible except to authorized users.
- 1966 The default value is "false".

### 1967 **4.6.5 VariablesType**



1968

### 1969 **Figure 51: VariablesType structure.**

1970 There are three types of variables that can be defined in a content element: input parameter variables, 1971 variables that take the value of a resource property, and variables whose value is derived from a variable 1972 expression.

1973 A variable is in scope for a particular deployment when the content element that defines the variable is in 1974 scope for that deployment.

### 1975 4.6.5.1 VariablesType Property Summary

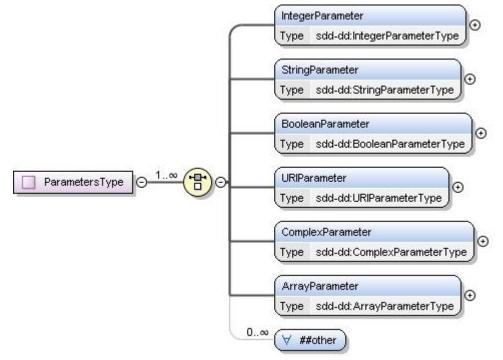
Name	Туре	*	Description
Parameters	ParametersType	0*	A list of variables whose values can be supplied as input to the deployment process.
ResourceProperty	ResourcePropertyType	0*	A variable whose value is set from the value of a resource property.
DerivedVariable	DerivedVariableType	0*	A set of expressions with optional associated conditions. The DerivedVariable's value is determined by evaluating the conditions and then setting the variable value to the result of the top priority expression from the set of expressions whose conditions evaluate to true.
	xsd:any	0*	

### 1976 **4.6.5.2 VariablesType Property Usage Notes**

**Parameters**: See the *ParametersType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.6].

- 1978 ResourceProperty: See the *ResourcePropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details
   1979 [4.6.18].
- DerivedVariable: See the DerivedVariableType section for structure and additional usage details
   [4.6.19].

### 1982 **4.6.6 ParametersType**



1983

#### 1984 Figure 52: ParametersType structure.

1985 Parameters are variables whose value is expected to be received as input to the deployment process.

The SDD author can specify multiple specific types of parameters, including validation rules for the valuesof the parameters.

### 1988 4.6.6.1 ParametersType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
IntegerParameter	IntegerParameterType	0*	An integer input parameter.
StringParameter	StringParameterType	0*	A string input parameter.
BooleanParameter	BooleanParameterType	0*	A boolean input parameter.
URIParameter	URIParameterType	0*	A Universal Resource Identifier input parameter.
ComplexParameter	ComplexParameterType	0*	A set of input parameters of different base types.
ArrayParameter	ArrayParameterType	0*	An array of input parameters of the same type.
	xsd:any	0*	

### 1989 **4.6.6.2 ParametersType Property Usage Notes**

1990 IntegerParameter: See the IntegerParameterType section for structure and additional usage details
 [4.6.8].

- StringParameter: See the StringParameterType section for structure and additional usage details
   [4.6.10].
- BooleanParameter: See the BooleanParameterType section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.12].
- URIParameter: See the URIParameterType section for structure and additional usage details
   [4.6.12.2].
- ComplexParameter: See the ComplexParameterType section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.13.2].
- ArrayParameter: See the ArrayParameterType section for structure and additional usage details
   [4.6.15].
- 2002 4.6.7 BaseParameterType

	② id Type xsd:ID
	@ sensitive
	Type xsd:boolean 🖸
	Default false
ſ	@ required
	Type xsd:boolean 🖸
	Default true
BaseParameterType 🕞	@ operation
	Type sdd-dd:OperationListType ●

2003

### 2004 Figure 53: BaseParameterType structure.

2005 *BaseParameterType* provides a default value, along with other attributes used by all parameter types. It 2006 also provides the *id* attribute, which is used to reference the parameter in variable expressions.

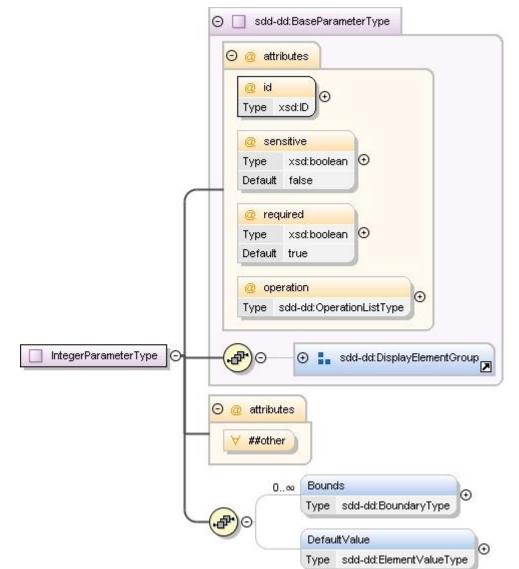
### 2007 4.6.7.1 BaseParameterType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	01	Name of the parameter.
Description	DisplayTextType	01	Description of the parameter.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	Short description of the parameter.
id	xsd:ID	1	Identifier used for referencing the variable within the descriptor.
sensitive	xsd:boolean	01 A "true" value indicates the variable contains sensitive data. **default value="false"	
required	xsd:boolean	01	A "true" value indicates that a value for the parameter must be provided. **default value="true"

2008	4.6.7.2 BaseParameterType Property Usage No	tes
2000	4.0.7.2 Daser diameter type Floperty Usage NU	162

- DisplayName: This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it
   MUST provide a label for the parameter.
- 2011 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the parameter.
- These elements may be used to assist the deployer in understanding the purpose and expected values for the parameters.
- 2016 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 2017 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- id: Parameters may be referenced in *DeploymentDescriptor* elements of type *VariableExpression* or *ElementValueType* within the scope of the parameter variable. The scope of the variable includes the content element where the variable is defined and all nested content elements. Variables defined in the top level content element are also visible in *Topology*. The *Variable* is referenced by placing the variable *id* within parentheses preceded by a dollar sign.
- For example, a variable with *id* value "InstallLocation" is referenced with the string (InstallLocation)".
- The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating log and trace messages.
- sensitive: The sensitive attribute provides an indication of whether the data within a variable is likely
   to be considered sensitive. User name and password are examples of data that may be considered
   sensitive.
- 2030 For example, *sensitive* data typically would not be displayed in a user interface, written to a log 2031 file, stored without protection, or in any way made visible except to authorized users.
- required: A "true" value for *required* indicates that a value for the parameter must be provided when
   the parameter is in scope for a particular deployment.
- 2034 In cases where the parameter should be ignored when the value expression is not valid for a 2035 particular deployment, set required to "false".
- 2036 A "false" value for the *required* attribute has no effect when a *DefaultValue* is provided.
- operation: This attribute enables unique parameters to be defined per operation. Note that the use of a parameter for a particular operation is determined by a reference to the parameter in a variable expression or artifact argument used when performing that operation. The operation(s) associated with a parameter's use can be determined by examining its use in the SDD. The *operation* attribute provides a quick way to know which operation(s) will use the parameter without having to examine the use of the parameter.
- All parameters defined within a *CompositeInstallable* are associated with the single operation supported by the *CompositeInstallable*. The *operation* attribute SHOULD NOT be set in this situation.
- 2045 See the OperationListType section for operation enumerations and their meaning [4.3.6].

## 2046 4.6.8 IntegerParameterType



2047

#### 2048 Figure 54: IntegerParameterType structure.

2049 *IntegerParameterType* defines upper and lower bounds that can be used to validate the input received for 2050 that parameter.

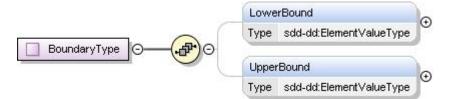
### 2051 4.6.8.1 IntegerParameterType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
	[extends] BaseParameterType		See the BaseParameterType section for additional properties [4.6.7].
Bounds	BoundaryType	0*	Specifies the boundaries for the value of the parameter.
DefaultValue	ElementValueType	01	Default value for the parameter.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

### 2052 **4.6.8.2 IntegerParameterType Property Usage Notes**

- 2053 See the BaseParameterType section for details about the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.7].
- Bounds: If there are restrictions on the range of values that are valid for a parameter, those restrictions MUST be specified in *Bounds*.
- 2056 See the *BoundaryType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.9].
- DefaultValue: The DefaultValue is used if no other value is provided as input to the deployment process.
- 2059 The value is interpreted based on the type of the defining parameter.
- 2060 For example, the *DefaultValue* for a *BooleanParameter* must be either "true" or "false"; the 2061 DefaultValue for a *StringParameter* must be a string; etc.
- 2062 A *pattern* of wildcard is not supported and MUST NOT be used with the *DefaultValue* element.
- 2063 See the *ElementValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.2].

### 2064 **4.6.9 BoundaryType**



#### 2065

#### 2066 Figure 55: BoundaryType structure.

2067 *BoundaryType* defines upper and lower bounds that can be used to validate the input received for that parameter.

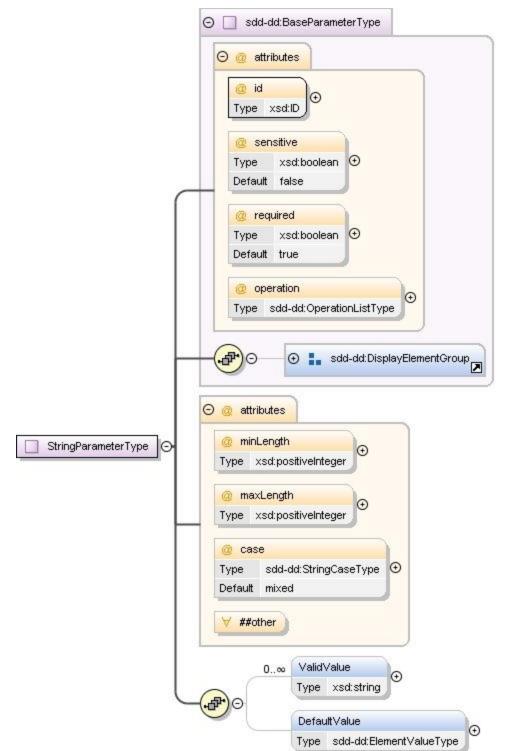
### 2069 4.6.9.1 BoundaryType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
LowerBound	ElementValueType	01	Lowest valid value for the parameter.
UpperBound	ElementValueType	01	Highest valid value for the parameter.

### 2070 4.6.9.2 BoundaryType Property Usage Notes

- **LowerBound**: This variable expression MUST resolve to an integer.
- 2072 If no LowerBound is specified, no integer value is too low.
- A *LowerBound* of "0" restricts the integer parameter to positive integer values.
- 2074 A *pattern* of wildcard is not supported and MUST NOT be used with the *LowerBound* element.
- 2075 See the *ElementValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.2].
- 2076 UpperBound: This variable expression MUST resolve to an integer.
- 2077 If no *UpperBound* is specified, no integer value is too high.
- 2078 A *pattern* of wildcard is not supported and MUST NOT be used with the *UpperBound* element.
- 2079 See the *ElementValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.2].

### 2080 4.6.10 StringParameterType



2081

### 2082 Figure 56: StringParameterType structure.

2083 *StringParameterType* supports definition of minimum and maximum lengths that can be used to validate 2084 the input received for the string parameter. It also supports definition of a list of valid input values.

### 2085 **4.6.10.1 StringParameterType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
	[extends] BaseParameterType		See the BaseParameterType section for additional properties [4.6.7].
ValidValue	xsd:string	0*	A string representing one valid value for the parameter.
DefaultValue	ElementValueType	01	Default value for the parameter.
minLength	xsd:positiveInteger	01	Minimum length of the parameter value.
maxLength	xsd:positiveInteger	01	Maximum length of the parameter value.
case	StringCaseType	01	The case of the string-"upper", "lower" or "mixed". **default value="mixed"
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

### 2086 **4.6.10.2 StringParameterType Property Usage Notes**

2087 See the *BaseParameterType* section for details about the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.7].

- ValidValue: Any number of valid values for the parameter can be listed using ValidValue elements.
   When both *DefaultValue* and one or more ValidValues are specified, *DefaultValue* MUST match one
- 2090 of the Valid Values.
- 2091 *ValidValues* should be in the correct case as identified in the *case* attribute.
- DefaultValue: The DefaultValue is used if no other value is provided as input to the deployment process.
- 2094 The value is interpreted based on the type of the defining parameter.
- 2095For example, the DefaultValue for a BooleanParameter must be either "true" or "false"; the2096DefaultValue for a StringParameter must be a string; etc.
- 2097 A *pattern* of wildcard is not supported and MUST NOT be used with the *DefaultValue* element.
- 2098 See the *ElementValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.2].
- 2099 minLength: When no minimum length is specified, no string is too short, including an empty string.
- **maxLength**: When no maximum length is specified, no string is too long.
- **case**: Used when the case of the string is restricted. Defaults to *mixed* if not defined.
- 2102 See the *StringCaseType* section for enumeration values and their meaning [4.6.11].

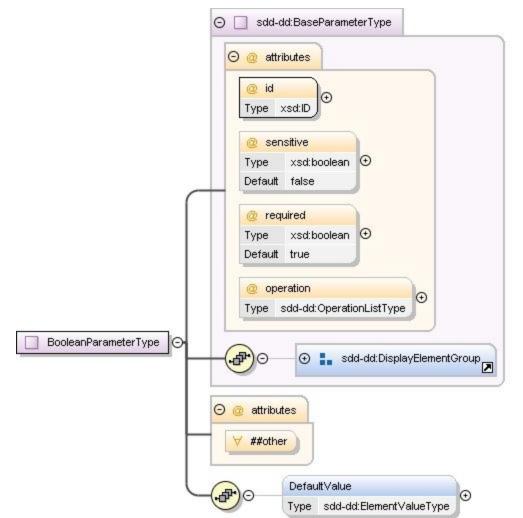
### 2103 4.6.11 StringCaseType

2104 *StringCaseType* defines the enumeration values for specifying case restrictions on a string parameter.

### 2105 **4.6.11.1 StringCaseType Property Usage Notes**

- **Iower**: The string MUST be lower case.
- **upper**: The string MUST be upper case.
- 2108 **mixed**: The string SHOULD be mixed case.

### 2109 4.6.12 BooleanParameterType



2110

### 2111 Figure 57: BooleanParameterType structure.

- 2112 When the *DefaultValue* element is defined for a boolean parameter, its value MUST be either "true" or
- 2113 "false".

### 2114 **4.6.12.1 BooleanParameterType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
	[extends] BaseParameterType		See the BaseParameterType section for additional properties [4.6.7].
DefaultValue	ElementValueType	01	Default value for the parameter.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

### 2115 4.6.12.2 BooleanParameterType Property Usage Notes

2116 See the BaseParameterType section for details about the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.7].

- DefaultValue: The *DefaultValue* is used if no other value is provided as input to the deployment process.
- 2119 The value is interpreted based on the type of the defining parameter.

- For example, the *DefaultValue* for a *BooleanParameter* must be either "true" or "false"; the DefaultValue for a *StringParameter* must be a string; etc.
- 2122 A *pattern* of wildcard is not supported and MUST NOT be used with the *DefaultValue* element.
- 2123 See the *ElementValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.2].

### 2124 4.6.13 URIParameterType

	<ul> <li>G sdd-dd:BaseParameterType</li> <li>G @ attributes</li> <li>@ @</li></ul>
	@ sensitive Type xsd:boolean ⊙ Defautt false
	@ required Type xsd:boolean ↔ Default true
	<pre>② operation Type sdd-dd:OperationListType</pre>
URIParameterType	⊖ ⊕ 🚛 sdd-dd:DisplayElementGroup
_	O @ attributes ∀ ##other

2125

- 2126 Figure 58: URIParameterType structure.
- 2127 When the *DefaultValue* element is specified for a URI parameter, its value MUST be a valid Uniform
- 2128 Resource Identifier.

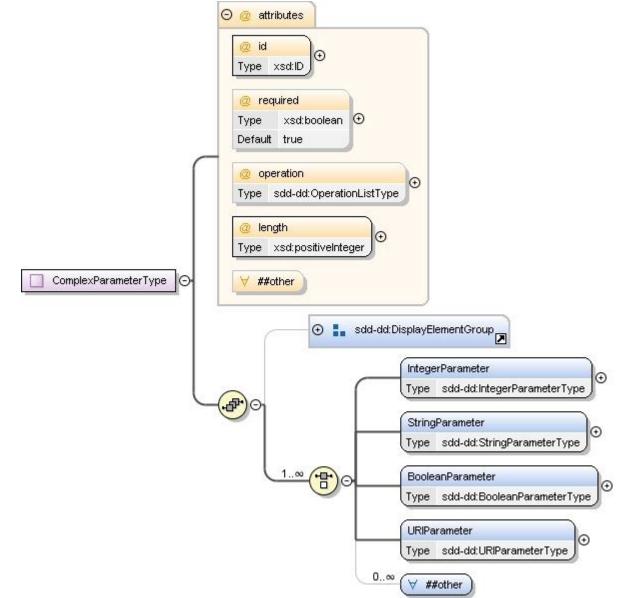
### 2129 **4.6.13.1 URIParameterType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
	[extends] BaseParameterType		See the BaseParameterType section for additional properties [4.6.7].
DefaultValue	ElementValueType	01	Default value for the parameter.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

### 2130 4.6.13.2 URIParameterType Property Usage Notes

- 2131 See the *BaseParameterType* section for details about the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.7].
- DefaultValue: The DefaultValue is used if no other value is provided as input to the deployment process.
- 2134 The value is interpreted based on the type of the defining parameter.
- 2135 For example, the *DefaultValue* for a *BooleanParameter* must be either "true" or "false"; the 2136 DefaultValue for a *StringParameter* must be a string; etc.
- 2137 A *pattern* of wildcard is not supported and MUST NOT be used with the *DefaultValue* element.
- 2138 See the *ElementValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.2].

### 2139 4.6.14 ComplexParameterType



2140

#### 2141 Figure 59: ComplexParameterType structure.

2142 *ComplexParameterType* is useful for specifying variables that contain a set of values of differing base

types, specifically for inputs that are logically grouped together, such as a host name and port number.

2144 See **[SDDEX]** for an example that demonstrates how to use the *ComplexParameterType* element.

### 2145 **4.6.14.1 ComplexParameterType Property Summary**

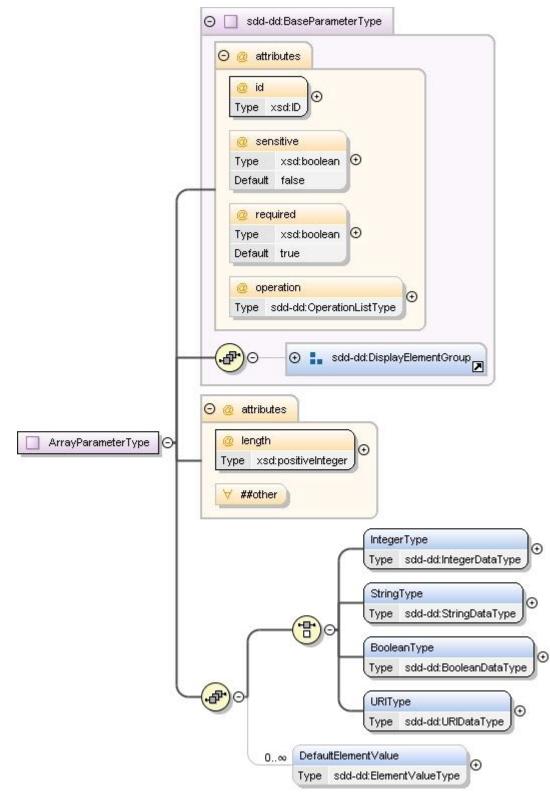
Name	Туре	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	01	Name of the complex parameter.
Description	DisplayTextType	01	Description of the complex parameter.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	Short description of the complex parameter.
IntegerParameter	IntegerParameterType	0*	An input array element of integer type.
StringParameter	StringParameterType	0*	An input array element of string type.
BooleanParameter	BooleanParameterType	0*	An input array element of boolean type.
URIParameter	URIParameterType	0*	An input array element that is a Universal Resource Identifier.
	xsd:any	0*	
id	xsd:ID	1	Identifier used for referencing the complex parameter within the descriptor.
required	xsd:boolean	01	A "true" value indicates that a value for the complex parameter must be provided.
			**default value="true"
operation	OperationListType	01	The complex parameter is used when the specified operation(s) is (are) performed.
length	xsd:positiveInteger	1	The number of elements in the input array.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

### 2146 4.6.14.2 ComplexParameterType Property Usage Notes

- DisplayName: This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it
   MUST provide a label for the parameter.
- 2149 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the parameter.
- These elements may be used to assist the deployer in understanding the purpose and expected values for the parameters.
- 2154 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 2155 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- IntegerParameter, StringParameter, BooleanParameter, URIParameter: These define the type of
   the elements in the input array as Integer, String, Boolean, or URI respectively.
- id: Parameters may be referenced in *DeploymentDescriptor* elements of type *VariableExpression* or *ElementValueType* within the scope of the parameter variable. The scope of the variable includes the content element where the variable is defined and all nested content elements. Variables defined in the top level content element are also visible in *Topology*. The *Variable* is referenced by placing the variable *id* within parentheses preceded by a dollar sign.

- For example, a variable with *id* value "InstallLocation" is referenced with the string (InstallLocation)".
- The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating log and trace messages.
- required: A "true" value for *required* indicates that a value for the parameter must be provided when
   the parameter is in scope for a particular deployment.
- 2169 In cases where the parameter should be ignored when the value expression is not valid for a2170 particular deployment, set required to "false".
- operation: This attribute enables unique parameters to be defined per operation. Note that the use of a parameter for a particular operation is determined by a reference to the parameter in a variable expression or artifact argument used when performing that operation. The operation(s) associated with a parameter's use can be determined by examining its use in the SDD. The *operation* attribute provides a quick way to know which operation(s) will use the parameter without having to examine the use of the parameter.
- All parameters defined within a *CompositeInstallable* are associated with the single operation supported by the *CompositeInstallable*. The *operation* attribute SHOULD NOT be set in this situation.
- 2179 See the OperationListType section for operation enumerations and their meaning [4.3.6].
- **length**: The *length* attribute MUST be set to the number of elements in the input array.

## 2181 4.6.15 ArrayParameterType



2183 Figure 60: ArrayParameterType structure.

2182

2184 *ArrayParameterType* should be used for variables containing multiple inputs of the same base type.

- For example, a parameter might specify a set of files and their locations that need to have a string substitution applied, in this case, the *ArrayParameter* would have *URIType* specified and the
- 2187 *DefaultElementValue* elements would specify a URI for each file needing the substitution.
- 2188 See **[SDDEX]** for an example that demonstrates how to use the *ArrayParameterType* element.

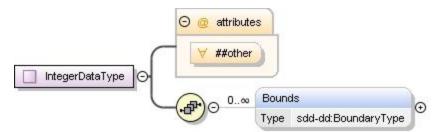
### 2189 **4.6.15.1 ArrayParameterType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
	[extends] BaseParameterType		See the BaseParameterType section for additional properties [4.6.7].
IntegerType	IntegerDataType	01	An array parameter of integer type.
StringType	StringDataType	01	An array parameter of string type.
BooleanType	BooleanDataType	01	An array parameter of boolean type.
URIType	URIDataType	01	An array parameter that is a Universal Resource Identifier.
DefaultElementValue	ElementValueType	0*	The default value given to each item in the array.
length	xsd:positiveInteger	1	The number of elements in the input array.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

### 2190 **4.6.15.2 ArrayParameterType Property Usage Notes**

- 2191 See the *BaseParameterType* section for details about the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.7].
- **IntegerType**: Used to specify a variable that contains an integer array.
- 2193 See the IntegerDataType section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.16].
- **StringType**: Used to specify a variable that contains a string array.
- 2195 See the *StringDataType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.17].
- **BooleanType**: Used to specify a variable that contains a boolean array.
- 2197The BooleanType XML tag MUST be included for type identification of a boolean array parameter2198defined in the DeploymentDescriptor, however, the element does not include any attributes or2199elements.
- URIType: Used to specify a variable that contains an array of Universal Resource Identifier values.
   The URIType XML tag MUST be included for type identification of an array parameter containing URIs defined in the DeploymentDescriptor, however, the element does not include any attributes or elements.
- **DefaultElementValue**: The default value for each element of the array parameter.
- 2205 Separate *DefaultElementValue* entries MUST be defined even if the value of each array element is 2206 identical.
- 2207 See the *ElementValueType* section for enumeration values and their meaning [4.6.2].
- length: The *length* attribute MUST be set to the number of elements in the input array. The value of the *length* attribute MUST match the number of *DefaultElementValue* elements defined in the ArrayParameter.
- For example, if the parameter being defined is an integer array representing a list of default ports, and the length is set to "3", three separate *DefaultElementValue* elements MUST be defined, one for each port.

### 2214 4.6.16 IntegerDataType



2215

#### 2216 Figure 61: IntegerDataType structure.

- 2217 IntegerDataType defines upper and lower bounds that can be used to validate the input received for the
- 2218 integer array parameter.

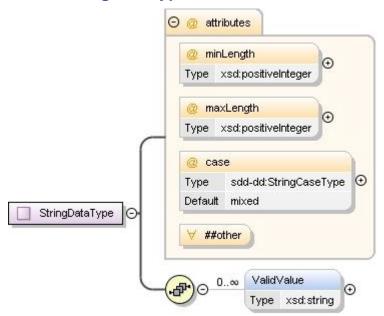
### 2219 4.6.16.1 IntegerDataType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
Bounds	BoundaryType	0*	Specifies the boundaries for the values of the array parameter's entries.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

### 2220 4.6.16.2 IntegerDataType Property Usage Notes

- **Bounds**: If there are restrictions on the range of values that are valid for the entries in an array parameter, those restrictions MUST be specified in *Bounds*.
- 2223 See the *BoundaryType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.9].

### 2224 4.6.17 StringDataType



2225

2226 Figure 62: StringDataType structure.

2227 *StringDataType* supports definition of minimum and maximum lengths that can be used to validate the 2228 input received for the string array parameter. It also supports definition of a list of valid input values.

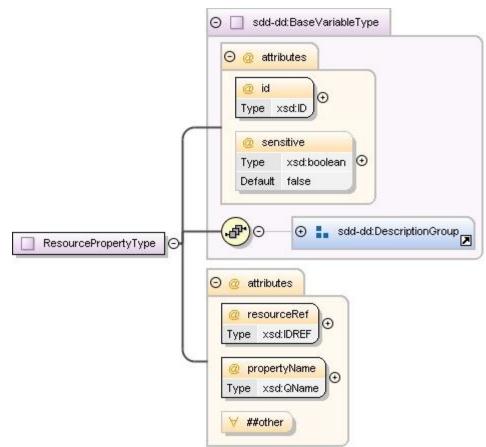
Name	Туре	*	Description
ValidValue	xsd:string	0*	A string representing one valid value for the parameter.
minLength	xsd:positiveInteger	01	Minimum length of the parameter value.
maxLength	xsd:positiveInteger	01	Maximum length of the parameter value.
case	StringCaseType	01	The case of the string"upper", "lower" or "mixed". **default value="mixed"
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

### 2229 4.6.17.1 StringDataType Property Summary

### 2230 4.6.17.2 StringDataType Property Usage Notes

- ValidValue: Any number of valid values for the parameter can be listed using ValidValue elements.
   When both DefaultElementValue and one or more ValidValues are specified, DefaultElementValue MUST match one of the ValidValues.
- 2234 *ValidValues* should be in the correct case as identified in the *case* attribute.
- **minLength**: When no minimum length is specified, no string is too short, including an empty string.
- 2236 maxLength: When no maximum length is specified, no string is too long.
- **case**: Used when the case of the string is restricted. Defaults to *mixed* if not defined.
- 2238 See the *StringCaseType* section for enumeration values and their meaning [4.6.11].

### 2239 4.6.18 ResourcePropertyType



2240

#### 2241 Figure 63: ResourcePropertyType structure.

2242 *ResourcePropertyType* provides the type definition for the *ResourceProperty* element of *VariablesType* 2243 [4.6.5]. *ResourceProperty* is a variable whose value is set from the property of a specific instance of a 2244 resource during a particular solution deployment. A SDD author MUST NOT include a *ResourceProperty* 2245 if the value of the property alone is not sufficient to resolve to a specific physical resource instance. All 2246 content elements can define *ResourceProperty* elements.

### 2247 **4.6.18.1 ResourcePropertyType Property Summary**

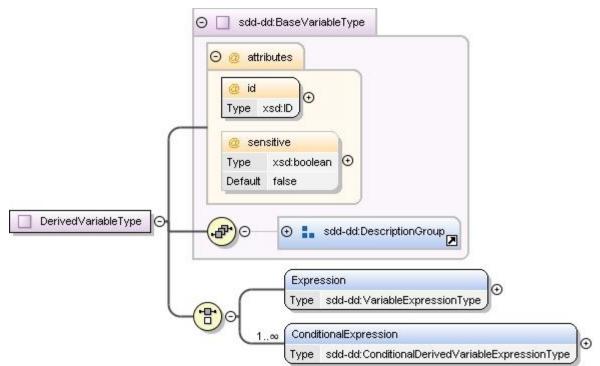
Name	Туре	*	Description
	[extends] BaseVariableType		See the BaseVariableType section for additional properties [4.6.4].
resourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	The resource in Topology that owns the property.
propertyName	xsd:QName	1	Name of the property whose value provides the variable's values.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

### 2248 4.6.18.2 ResourcePropertyType Property Usage Notes

2249 See the BaseVariableType section for details about the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.4].

- resourceRef: The resourceRef attribute MUST identify the resource in *Topology* that owns the property and will provide the value for *ResourceProperty*.
- propertyName: The *propertyName* attribute identifies the name of the resource property whose value is to be used as the value of *ResourceProperty*.

### 2254 4.6.19 DerivedVariableType



#### 2255

#### 2256 Figure 64: DerivedVariableType structure.

A *DerivedVariable* defines a series of expressions with optional conditions. The value of the variable is determined by evaluating the boolean conditions and then setting the variable to the result of the top priority expression from the set of expressions whose conditions evaluate to true. This restriction does not apply to variables of the same name in different descriptors. The SDD author MUST create

2261 *DerivedVariables* in a way that makes the selection of the expression unambiguous.

### 2262 4.6.19.1 DerivedVariableType Property Summary

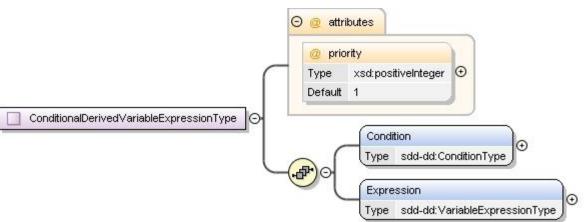
Name	Туре	*	Description
	[extends] BaseVariableType		See the BaseVariableType section for additional properties [4.6.4].
Expression	VariableExpressionType	1	An expression whose results become the value of the variable.
ConditionalExpression	ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType	1*	An expression and an associated condition.

### 2263 **4.6.19.2 DerivedVariableType Property Usage Notes**

2264 See the *BaseVariableType* section for details about the inherited attributes and elements [4.6.4].

- Expression: When the *DerivedVariable* is used to define one variable whose value is not conditional,
   the SDD author can include one variable expression defined in one *Expression* element.
- 2267 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- ConditionalExpression: When the variable will take one of a number of possible values depending
   on the characteristics of the resources that participate in the particular deployment, then one
   *ConditionalExpression* element is defined for each value-condition pair.
- 2271 See the *ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details 2272 [4.6.20].

### 2273 4.6.20 ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType



2274

#### 2275 Figure 65: ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType structure.

- 2276 *ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType* is the type of the *ConditionalExpression* elements in derived
- 2277 variables. These elements associate a condition with a variable expression.

### 2278 4.6.20.1 ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
Condition	ConditionType	1	A set of resource characteristics that are evaluated to determine if the associated expression is a candidate for determining the value of the derived variable.
Expression	VariableExpressionType	1	Evaluation of this expression produces a candidate value for the derived variable.
priority	xsd:positiveInteger	01	A priority used as a tie-breaker when multiple expressions are available to determine the value of the variable. **default value="1"

### 2279 4.6.20.2 ConditionalDerivedVariableExpressionType Property Usage Notes

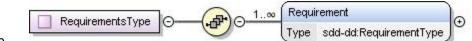
- Condition: Selection of conditioned expressions is based on the characteristics of one or more
   resources that participate in a particular solution deployment. These characteristics are defined in the
   *Condition* element.
- 2283 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
- **Expression**: The *Expression* element contains the expressions that evaluate to a potential value of the *DerivedVariable*. Only one expression will be selected for use in a particular solution deployment.
- 2286 See the *VariableExpressionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- priority: When multiple conditions evaluate to true for a particular deployment, the expression chosen is determined by the *priority* value. A higher priority is indicated by a lower value. "1" is the highest priority.

## 2290 4.7 Requirements

A Requirement is an environmental necessity that a resource must have fulfilled in order for an artifact to
 be deployed successfully into that environment. *Requirements* are defined by content elements. A
 *Requirement* consists of resource constraints that the SDD author states MUST be met prior to
 successful deployment or use of the software described by the SDD package. Each *Requirement* definition lists one or more deployment lifecycle operations to which the *Requirement* applies. When the

- 2296 *Requirement* is specified in an atomic content element, the operation associates the *Requirement* with 2297 artifacts within the atomic content element. (See the *OperationType* section for the mapping between
- 2298 operations and artifacts [4.3.7]. Note that the use operation indicates that the Requirement is associated
- 2299 with running of the software after deployment and not with content element artifacts.) When the
- 2300 Requirement is specified in a CompositeUnit or CompositeInstallable, the operation value MUST either be
- 2301 use or be the same top level operation as defined in the CompositeInstallable element. When the
- Requirement is specified for a *ReferencedPackage*, the *operation* associates the *Requirement* with a top level *operation* within the referenced SDD.
- All *Requirements* specified for content elements that are in scope for a particular deployment MUST be met.
- 2306 When a *Requirement* can be satisfied in more than one way, *Alternatives* can be defined within a 2307 *Requirement*. A *Requirement* is considered met when any one of the *Alternatives* is satisfied.

## 2308 4.7.1 RequirementsType



# 2309

### 2310 Figure 66: RequirementsType structure.

- 2311 Requirements Type provides the type definition for Requirements in InstallableUnit and LocalizationUnit
- 2312 elements. It defines a list of *Requirement* elements.

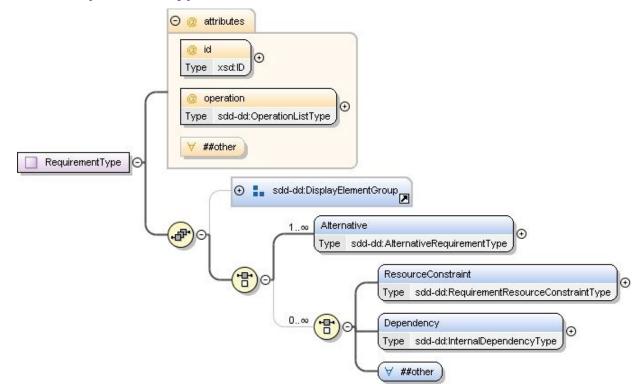
### 2313 4.7.1.1 RequirementsType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
Requirement	RequirementType	1*	A requirement that must be met prior to processing the defining content element's artifacts.

### 2314 4.7.1.2 RequirementsType Property Usage Notes

- Requirement: The *Requirements* element contains a sequence of *Requirement* elements. The
   *Requirement* elements define requirements that MUST be met prior to successful processing of the
   content element's artifacts.
- 2318 See the *RequirementType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.2].

### 2319 4.7.2 RequirementType



2320

### 2321 Figure 67: RequirementType structure.

A *Requirement* either directly defines a single set of resource constraints that MUST be met or defines one or more alternative sets of resource constraints, only one of which MUST be met.

2324 When multiple *Requirement* elements are declared for the same operation, all MUST be met prior to 2325 processing the associated artifact.

2326 The association is made between a requirement and an artifact via the *operation* attribute.

### 2327 4.7.2.1 RequirementType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	01	Name of the requirement.
Description	DisplayTextType	01	Description of the requirement.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	Short description of the requirement.
Alternative	AlternativeRequirementType	0*	An alternative that can satisfy the requirement.
ResourceConstraint	RequirementResourceConstraintType	0*	A set of constraints on one resource.
Dependency	InternalDependencyType	0*	A dependency on another content element.
	xsd:any	0*	
id	xsd:ID	1	Identifier for requirement scoped to the deployment descriptor.
operation	OperationListType	1	Requirement must be met before this operation is performed.

2329 2330	•	<b>DisplayName</b> : This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it MUST provide a label for the requirement.
2331		See the DisplayElementGroup section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
2332 2333	•	<b>Description, ShortDescription</b> : These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the requirement.
2334		The Description element MUST be defined if the ShortDescription element is defined.
2335		See the DisplayElementGroup section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
2336	•	Alternative: Alternative elements are used when a requirement can be satisfied in multiple ways.
2337 2338		As a convenience for tooling that produces SDDs, it is also possible to define a single <i>Alternative</i> . This is semantically identical to directly defining <i>ResourceConstraints</i> under <i>Requirements</i> .
2339		To satisfy a requirement, at least one of the specified alternatives MUST be satisfied.
2340		See the AlternativeRequirementType section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.3].
2341 2342	•	<b>ResourceConstraint</b> : When a requirement can be satisfied in only one way, constraints MAY be defined directly under <i>Requirement</i> or in a single <i>Alternative</i> element.
2343 2344		Constraints are defined using a sequence of <i>ResourceConstraints</i> . Every constraint in the sequence MUST be met for the requirement to be met.
2345 2346		See the <i>RequirementResourceConstraintType</i> section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.5].
2347 2348 2349 2350 2351	•	<b>Dependency</b> : When one content element must be processed before another for any reason, a <i>pre-req</i> type <i>Dependency</i> MUST be defined. Reasons for a pre-requisite dependency include the use of an output variable from one artifact as an argument to another; the deployment of a resource before it is configured; and the configuration of a resource before deployment of another resource that depends on it.
2352		See the InternalDependencyType section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.6].
2353 2354	•	id: The <i>id</i> attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating log and trace messages.
2355 2356		The <i>id</i> attribute for a <i>Requirement</i> MUST be unique within a <i>DeploymentDescriptor</i> and MUST be unique across an aggregation of Deployment Descriptors.
2357 2358	•	<b>operation</b> : A <i>Requirement</i> is associated with application of one or more operations by setting its <i>operation</i> attribute value to one of the enumerated values defined in <i>OperationListType</i> [4.3.6].

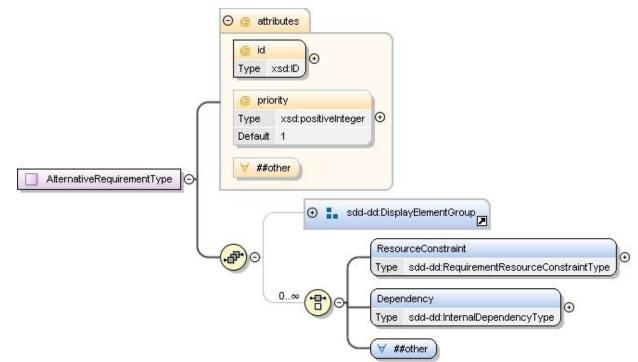
0..\*

xsd:anyAttribute

4.7.2.2 RequirementType Property Usage Notes

- 2359If the Requirement is not a pre-requisite for application of an operation, but rather is required before2360the resulting resources are considered usable, then the value SHOULD be set to use. (Note that a2361completion action may also be required before a resulting resource is considered usable. See the2362CompletionType section [4.3.14].)
- 2363The value of operation for a Requirement defined in an atomic content element MUST be set either to2364use or to an operation that is associated with an artifact element defined in the content element's2365Artifacts. The operation value(s) associate the Requirement with one or more artifact(s).
- 2366 When the *Requirement* is specified in a *CompositeUnit* or *CompositeInstallable*, the *operation* value 2367 MUST be set either to *use* or be the same top level *operation* as defined in the *CompositeInstallable* 2368 element.
- 2369 There is no default value for *operation*. The SDD author must define it explicitly.
- 2370 See the *OperationType* section for enumeration values and their meaning [4.3.7].

## 2371 4.7.3 AlternativeRequirementType



2372

#### 2373 Figure 68: AlternativeRequirementType structure.

- 2374 *AlternativeRequirementType* provides the type definition for *Alternative* elements used within
- 2375 requirements to define alternative sets of resource constraints that will satisfy the requirement.

## 2376 **4.7.3.1 AlternativeRequirementType Property Summary**

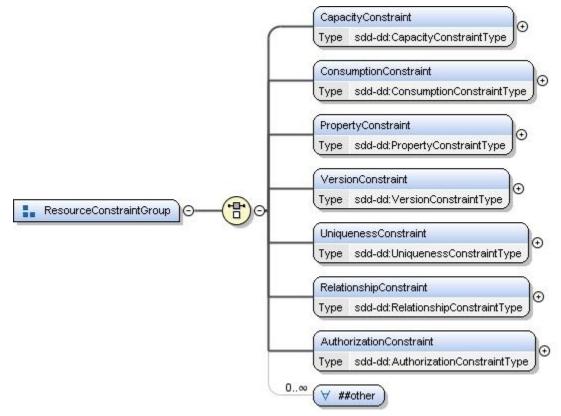
Name	Туре	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	01	Name of the alternative.
Description	DisplayTextType	01	Description of the alternative.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	Short description of the alternative.
ResourceConstraint	RequirementResourceConstraintType	1*	A set of requirements on one resource.
Dependency	InternalDependencyType	0*	A dependency on another content element.
	xsd:any	0*	
id	xsd:ID	1	Identifier for the alternative scoped to the deployment descriptor.
priority	xsd:positiveInteger	01	Assists in determining alternative selected when multiple alternatives evaluate to true. **default value="1"
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

## 2377 4.7.3.2 AlternativeRequirementType Property Usage Notes

DisplayName: This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it
 MUST provide a label for the alternative requirement.

- 2380 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the alternative requirement.
- 2383 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 2384 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- ResourceConstraint: Every *ResourceConstraint* defined in a single *Alternative* MUST be met for the alternative requirement to be considered satisfied.
- 2387 See the *RequirementResourceConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details 2388 [4.7.5].
- Dependency: When one content element must be processed before another for any reason, a *pre-req* type *Dependency* MUST be defined. Reasons for a pre-requisite dependency include the use of an output variable from one artifact as an argument to another; the deployment of a resource before it is configured; and the configuration of a resource before deployment of another resource that depends on it.
- 2394 See the *InternalDependencyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.6].
- id: The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating
   log and trace messages.
- priority: If there are multiple satisfied alternatives during a particular solution deployment, one of the alternatives must be selected. The *priority* attribute communicates the SDD author's prioritization of the alternatives. A lower number represents a higher priority with "1" representing the highest priority. Other inputs may also be used to select an alternative. The criteria for making this selection are outside of the scope of the SDD.

#### 2402 4.7.4 ResourceConstraintGroup



#### 2403

#### 2404 **Figure 69: ResourceConstraintGroup structure.**

2405The elements of ResourceConstraintGroup are used when defining content element requirements on2406resources. The ResourceConstraint element is used to group one or more constraints on a single

2407 resource.

Name	Туре	*	Description
CapacityConstraint	CapacityConstraintType	01	A bound on a quantifiable property of a resource.
ConsumptionConstraint	ConsumptionConstraintType	01	A required quantity of a property of a resource in any state
PropertyConstraint	PropertyConstraintType	01	A required value or set of values of a property.
VersionConstraint	VersionConstraintType	01	A required value or set of values of a version property.
UniquenessConstraint	UniquenessConstraintType	01	A required mapping of two resources in the topology to unique instances in the deployment environment.
RelationshipConstraint	RelationshipConstraintType	01	A required relationship between the resource identified in the resourceRef and another resource in the topology.
AuthorizationConstraint	AuthorizationConstraintType	01	A required authorization level for a resource.
	xsd:any	0*	

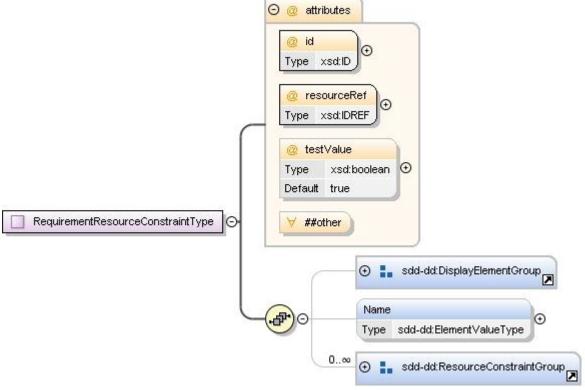
#### 2408 **4.7.4.1 ResourceConstraintGroup Property Summary**

#### 2409 4.7.4.2 ResourceConstraintGroup Property Usage Notes

- CapacityConstraint: CapacityConstraint elements are used in ResourceConstraints to express constraints on the available capacity of a particular property of a particular resource.
- A CapacityConstraint tests a numeric value representing a bound on a quantifiable property of a
   resource, such as processor speed. The test may be for a lower (minimum) or upper (maximum)
   bound. This constraint differs from a *ConsumptionConstraint* in that it is comparative, not cumulative.
- 2415 When multiple *CapacityConstraint* elements are defined by content elements participating in a 2416 particular solution deployment apply to the same property of the same resource, the most restrictive 2417 constraint applies.
- 2418 See the CapacityConstraintType section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.1].
- ConsumptionConstraint: ConsumptionConstraint elements are used in ResourceConstraints to
   express constraints on the quantity of a particular property of a specific resource that is available for consumption.
- A *ConsumptionConstraint* defines a required quantity of a consumable resource property. The *ConsumptionConstraint* is cumulative rather than comparative.
- 2424An example of a consumable resource property is the disk space property of a file system2425resource.
- When multiple *ConsumptionConstraint* elements are defined for the same resource by content
   elements participating in a particular solution deployment, the sum of all the expressed consumption
   constraints must be met by the resource.
- 2429 See the *ConsumptionConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.3].
- PropertyConstraint: PropertyConstraint elements are used in ResourceConstraints to indicate that specific resource properties must have a specific value or set of values.
- 2432 See the *PropertyConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.5].
- VersionConstraint: VersionConstraint elements are used in ResourceConstraints to express a constraint on the version of a specific resource.

- A *VersionConstraint* defines a required resource version or a range of versions. It MAY include a certified version or range of versions representing a more restrictive set of versions whose use carries a higher degree of confidence.
- 2438 Version formats and comparison rules vary greatly. The SDD does not provide information on how to 2439 interpret version strings.
- 2440 See the VersionConstraintType section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.7].
- UniquenessConstraint: UniquenessConstraint elements are used in ResourceConstraints to
   indicate when two resources defined in topology MUST or MUST NOT resolve to the same resource
   instance during a particular deployment.
- 2444 See the *UniquenessConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.12].
- RelationshipConstraint: *RelationshipConstraint* elements are used in *ResourceConstraints* to indicate a constraint on a particular relationship between resources.
- 2447 See the *RelationshipConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.13].
- AuthorizationConstraint: AuthorizationConstraint elements are used in ResourceConstraints to
   indicate a required level of authorization required by a resource in order to deploy the content that is
   described by the SDD.
- 2451 See the *AuthorizationConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.14].

#### 2452 **4.7.5 RequirementResourceConstraintType**



#### 2453

#### 2454 Figure 70: RequirementResourceConstraintType structure.

2455 *ResourceConstraintType* provides the Type section for the *ResourceConstraint* element in content 2456 element *Requirements*. A *ResourceConstraint* is a set of zero or more constraints on one resource.

## 2457 4.7.5.1 RequirementResourceConstraintType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description

DisplayName	DisplayTextType	01	Name for the resource constraint.
Description	DisplayTextType	01	Description of the resource constraint.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	Short description of the resource constraint.
Name	VariableExpressionType	<del>01</del>	The name of the resource. [DEPRECATED in SDD v2.0]
CapacityConstraint	CapacityConstraintType	01	A capacity constraint that applies to the resource identified in resourceRef.
ConsumptionConstraint	ConsumptionConstraintType	01	A consumption constraint that applies to the resource identified in resourceRef.
PropertyConstraint	PropertyConstraintType	01	A property constraint that applies to the resource identified in resourceRef.
VersionConstraint	VersionConstraintType	01	A version constraint that applies to the resource identified in resourceRef.
UniquenessConstraint	UniquenessConstraintType	01	A required mapping of two resources in the topology to unique instances in the deployment environment.
RelationshipConstraint	RelationshipConstraintType	01	A required relationship between the resource identified in the resourceRef and another resource in the topology.
AuthorizationConstraint	AuthorizationConstraintType	01	A required authorization level to operate on the resource identified in resourceRef.
	xsd:any	0*	
id	xsd:ID	1	Identifier for the ResourceConstraint scoped to the deployment descriptor.
resourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	Reference to a resource specification in topology.
testValue	xsd:boolean	01	Indicates whether the ResourceConstraint must evaluate to true or to false.
			**default value="true".
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

## 2458 4.7.5.2 RequirementResourceConstraintType Property Usage Notes

- DisplayName: This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it MUST provide a label for the resource constraint.
- 2461 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the resource constraint.
- 2464 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 2465 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 2466 Name: This name is used to identify the resource in the deployment environment. If the resource
   2467 identified by resourceRef does not have the name defined here, then the constraint is not met.
- 2468 See the VariableExpressionType section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 2469 [Starting with SDD v2.0, Name has been deprecated.]

- CapacityConstraint, ConsumptionConstraint, PropertyConstraint, VersionConstraint,
   UniquenessConstraint, RelationshipConstraint, AuthorizationConstraint: See the
   ResourceConstraintGroup section for structure and additional usage of the individual constraints
   [4.7.4].
- id: The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating
   log and trace messages.
- **resourceRef**: This is the resource to which the constraints apply.
- 2477 This reference MUST refer to the *id* of a resource in *Topology*.
- testValue: When the result of evaluating all of the constraints defined in the *ResourceConstraint* matches the value of *testValue*, the *ResourceConstraint* is considered met.
- 2480 When no constraints are defined, and *testValue* is "true", the constraint is met if the resource exists 2481 as defined in topology.
- 2482 When no constraints are defined, and *testValue* is "false", the constraint is met if the resource, as 2483 defined in topology, does not exist.

## 2484 4.7.6 InternalDependencyType

	@ type
	Type sdd-dd:DependencyType ↔ Default pre-req
C	@ contentElementRef Type xsd:IDREF ⊕
nternalDependencyType	② contentElementRefOperation Type sdd-dd:OperationListType ↔
	∀ ##other

2485

#### 2486 Figure 71: InternalDependencyType structure.

2487 InternalDependencyType provides the type definition for Dependency elements defined in all types of 2488 content elements. Dependency elements allow the expression of dependence on the application of a 2489 particular operation to a content element defined in the deployment descriptor before application of a 2490 particular operation on the defining content element. The dependency is associated with an operation on 2491 the defining content element by the operation attribute in the *Requirement* defining the *Dependency* element. The dependency is associated with an operation on the depended on content element by the 2492 contentRefOperation attribute in the Dependency. There are three types of dependencies: pre-requisites, 2493 co-requisites and ex-requisites. 2494

## 2495 **4.7.6.1 InternalDependencyType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	01	A human-understandable description of the dependency.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	A short human-understandable description of the dependency.

type	DependencyType	01	Type can be "pre-req", "co-req", or "ex-req". **default value="pre-req"
contentElementRef	xsd:IDREF	1	A reference to the content element which is depended on.
contentElementRefOperation	OperationListType	01	The dependency is on application of this operation to the content element identified in contentRef.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

## 2496 **4.7.6.2 InternalDependencyType Property Usage Notes**

- Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the dependency.
- 2499 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 2500 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- type: See the *DependencyType* section for an explanation of the semantics of each of the possible dependency types [4.7.7].
- contentElementRef: The contentElementRef value is the id of the content element that is depended on.
- 2505 The value MUST reference the *id* of a content element.
- contentElementRefOperation: When the depended-on content element is an atomic content
   element, the operation defined here effectively identifies the artifact that must be processed for a pre requisite or co-requisite or not processed for an ex-requisite.
- 2509 When the depended-on content element is a *CompositeUnit*, the operation defined in 2510 *contentElementRefOperation* MUST be the top level operation defined by the containing 2511 *CompositeInstallable*.
- 2512 See the *OperationListType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.6].

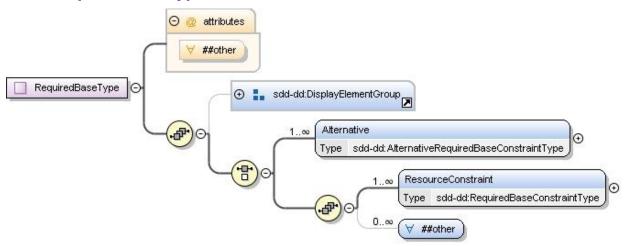
## 2513 4.7.7 DependencyType

2514 The *DependencyType* enumeration provides the value for the *type* attribute in *Dependency* elements.

## 2515 4.7.7.1 DependencyType Property Usage Notes

- pre-req: A *pre-req* dependency is satisfied if the other content element is in scope for the
   deployment. The *pre-req* indicates that the other content element MUST be processed before the
   content element that defines the *pre-req*.
- 2519 The dependency is not met if the other content element is not in scope.
- co-req: A *co-req* dependency is satisfied if the other content element is in scope for the deployment.
   There is no dependence on order of processing.
- 2522 The dependency is not met if the other content element is not in scope.
- **ex-req**: An *ex-req* dependency indicates that the other content element MUST NOT be in scope.
- 2524 The dependency is not met if the other content element is in scope.

#### 2525 4.7.8 RequiredBaseType



#### 2526

#### 2527 Figure 72: RequiredBaseType structure.

2528RequiredBaseType provides the type definition for the RequiredBase element of InstallableUnit and2529LocalizationUnit elements and the LocalizationBase element of LocalizationUnits. These elements2530declare the identity characteristics of one or more resources that will be modified or localized by applying2531of the content element's artifacts. Definition of a RequiredBase element represents a requirement that a2532resource matching the declared characteristic exists. Definition of a LocalizationBase element represents2533a condition on the existence of a resource that matches the declared characteristics.

#### 2534 4.7.8.1 RequiredBaseType Property Summary

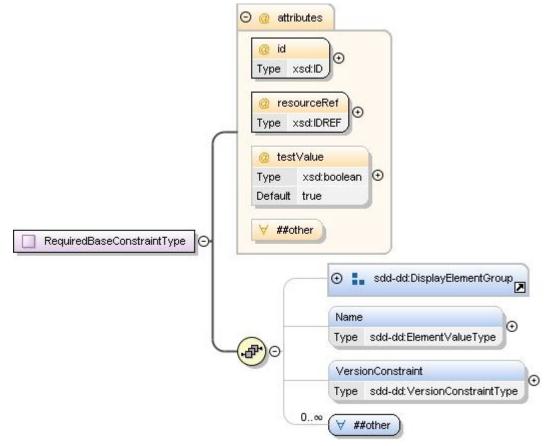
Name	Туре	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	01	Display name for the requirement on a resource to serve as the base of an update or localization.
Description	DisplayTextType	01	Description of the requirement. Required if ShortDescription is defined.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	Short description of the requirement.
Alternative	AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType	0*	Alternative set of constraints on a required base resource.
ResourceConstraint	RequiredBaseConstraintType	1*	Constraints on the required base resource.
	xsd:any	0*	
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

#### 2535 4.7.8.2 RequiredBaseType Property Usage Notes

- DisplayName: This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it
   MUST provide a label for the required base element.
- 2538 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the required base for this content element.
- 2541 The Description element MUST be defined if the ShortDescription element is defined.
- 2542 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].

- Alternative: When more than one resource can be used as the update or localization base, two or more *Alternative* elements are defined to describe the choices. As a convenience for tooling that produces SDDs, a single *Alternative* can be defined in place of a *ResourceConstraint*.
- 2546 See the *AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details 2547 [4.7.10].
- ResourceConstraint: ResourceConstraints defined here identify one or more particular resources
   that can serve as the update or localization base. If ResourceConstraints are defined for multiple
   resources, they are all updated or localized by application of the content element.
- 2551 See the *RequiredBaseConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.9].

## 2552 **4.7.9 RequiredBaseConstraintType**



2553

#### 2554 **Figure 73: RequiredBaseConstraintType structure.**

*RequiredBaseConstraintType* provides the type definition for the *ResourceConstraint* elements used in
 *RequiredBase* and *LocalizationBase* elements. A required base definition differs from a requirement
 definition in the limited nature of the constraints that can be specified. The purpose of constraints within a
 required base is to identify resource instances that can be correctly updated or localized by the content
 element. Only constraints related to the basic identity characteristics of the resource are allowed.

## 2560 **4.7.9.1 RequiredBaseConstraintType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	01	Name of the constraint.
Description	DisplayTextType	01	Description of the constraint.

ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	Short description of the constraint.
Name	VariableExpressionType	<del>01</del>	Name of the required base resource as understood in the deployment environment. [DEPRECATED in SDD v2.0]
VersionConstraint	VersionConstraintType	01	Allowed versions for the required base resource.
	xsd:any	0*	
id	xsd:ID	1	Constraint identifier scoped to the deployment descriptor.
resourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	Reference to the resource representing the required base for an update operation.
testValue	xsd:boolean	01	Defines the desired result of the required base constraint. **default value="true"
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

## 2561 **4.7.9.2 RequiredBaseConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

2562 •	DisplayName: This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, in
2563	MUST provide a label for the constraint.

2564 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].

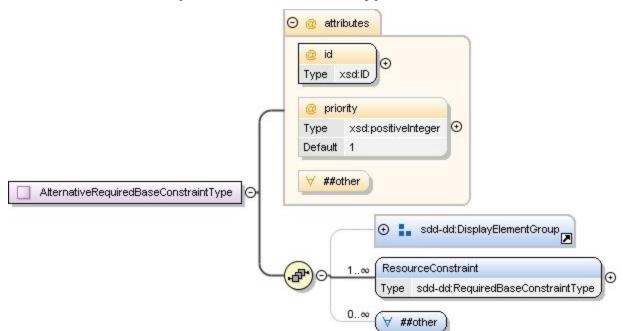
Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the constraint on the required base.
 The Description element MUST he defined if the ChartDescription element is defined.

2567 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.

2568 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].

- Name: The Name element provides the name by which the resource is known in the deployment
   environment. The value of Name is compared to resource names found in the deployment
   environment as part of constraint evaluation.
- 2572 If the resource name is declared in the referenced resource definition, it SHOULD NOT be declared
   2573 here. If the resource name is changed by application of the update, the original name SHOULD be
   2574 declared here and the updated name SHOULD be declared in *ResultingResource*. The name
   2575 declared here is always the one that represents the required value for the required base.
- 2576 See the VariableExpressionType section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 2577 [Starting with SDD v2.0, *Name* has been deprecated.]
- VersionConstraint: The VersionConstraint element defines the set of versions that can serve as a base for the update.
- 2580 See the VersionConstraintType section for structure and additional usage details [4.4.7].
- id: The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating
   log and trace messages.
- resourceRef: The resourceRef attribute value MUST reference the *id* of the resource element in
   *Topology* to which this constraint refers.
- testValue: The required base constraint is met when the boolean result of comparing the declared version to the actual version is equal to the boolean value specified in *testValue*.
- 2587 Because the purpose of a required base constraint is to positively identify one or more resources that 2588 can serve as the base for an update or localization, there MUST always be one *ResourceConstraint* 2589 that has *testValue* set to "true".
- Additional *ResourceConstraints* can be defined with *testValue* set to "false". These constraints identify characteristics of the same required base resource that must not be true for that resource to serve as the base.

## 2593 4.7.10 AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType



2594

#### 2595 Figure 74: AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType structure.

2596 *AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType* provides the type definition for the *Alternative* elements used in 2597 *RequiredBase* and *LocalizationBase* elements.

## 2598 4.7.10.1 AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	01	Name of the constraint.
Description	DisplayTextType	01	Description of the constraint.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	Short description of the constraint.
ResourceConstraint	RequiredBaseConstraintType	1*	A set of requirements on one resource.
	xsd:any	0*	
id	xsd:ID	1	Constraint identifier scoped to the deployment descriptor.
priority	xsd:positiveInteger	01	Assists in determining alternative selected when multiple alternatives evaluate to true. **default value="1"
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

## 2599 4.7.10.2 AlternativeRequiredBaseConstraintType Property Usage Notes

- DisplayName: This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it
   MUST provide a label for the alternative.
- 2602 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the alternative.

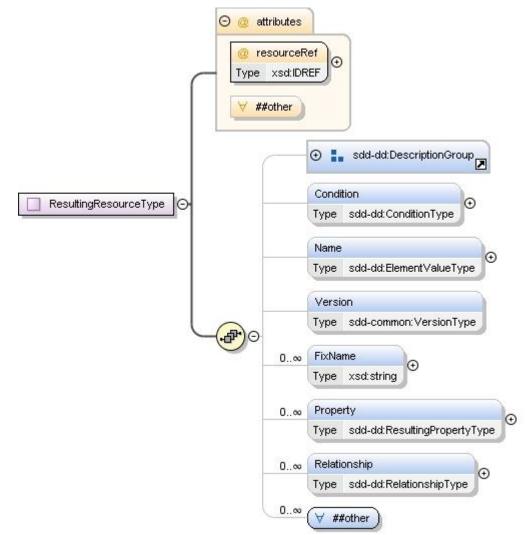
- 2605 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 2606 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- ResourceConstraint: ResourceConstraints defined here identify one or more particular resources that can serve as the update or localization base. If ResourceConstraints are defined for multiple resources, they are all updated or localized by application of the content element.
- 2610 See the *RequiredBaseConstraintType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.9].
- id: The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating
   log and trace messages.
- priority: If there are multiple satisfied alternatives during a particular solution deployment, one of the alternatives must be selected. The *priority* attribute communicates the SDD author's prioritization of the alternatives. A lower number represents a higher priority with "1" representing the highest priority. Other inputs may also be used to select an alternative. The criteria for making this selection are outside of the scope of the SDD.

## 2618 **4.8 Resulting and Changed Resources**

2619 Deployment of an SDD package creates or modifies software resources. These resources are included in 2620 the *Topology* definition and described in more detail in *ResultingResource* and *ResultingChange* 2621 elements.

2622 The SDD author can choose to model resulting and modified resources at a very granular level, at a very 2623 coarse level; at any level in between, or not at all. An example of modeling resulting resources at a granular level would be modeling every file created by the deployment as a resulting resource. An 2624 2625 example of modeling resulting resources at a very coarse level would be modeling the software product 2626 created by deployment as a single resulting resource. The choice depends on the needs of the solution deployment. If a resource is not modeled in the SDD, no requirements can be expressed on it, no 2627 2628 conditions can be based on it and no variables can be set from values of its properties. It cannot play any of the roles described for resources in the ResourceType section of this document [4.2.2]. 2629

## 2630 4.8.1 ResultingResourceType



#### 2631

2649

#### 2632 Figure 75: ResultingResourceType structure.

2633 InstallableUnit and LocalizationUnit content elements can include zero or more ResultingResource 2634 elements that describe the key resources installed or updated when the content element's artifacts are processed. The type definition for these elements is provided by ResultingResourceType. 2635 2636 ResultingResource elements refer to resources in topology and define characteristics of those resources 2637 that will become true when the artifact is applied. The deployment descriptor author MAY omit the ResultingResource element from the content element and the definition of the resource from Topology 2638 when no knowledge of their existence is required for deployment of the solution or for aggregation of the 2639 solution. Characteristics that exist in ResultingResource and elsewhere, such as Topology or 2640 2641 ResultingChange, MUST NOT conflict.

- For example, if *Topology* specifies a property that indicates that a file must be writable, it would be incorrect for *ResultingResource* to specify that the resulting file resource is read-only.
- 2644 Example uses of the *ResultingResource* element are to:
- determine whether potentially resulting resources will actually be installed or updated;
  identify the resource associated with a content element that may be subsequently uninstalled
- adentify the resource associated with a content element that may be subsequently uninstalled using the uninstall information in this SDD;
- discover the components of a logical solution resource previously installed using this SDD;
  - check whether or not a content element has already been installed.

## 2650 **4.8.1.1 ResultingResourceType Property Summary**

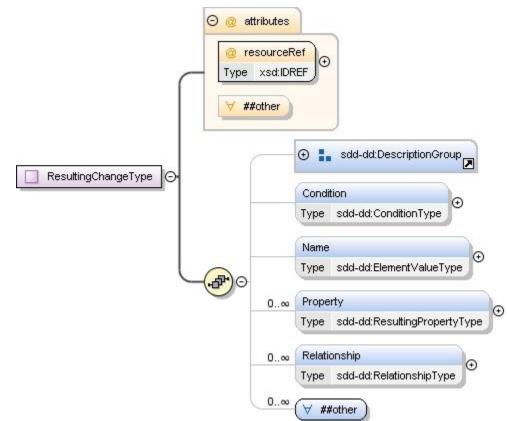
Name	Туре	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	01	Description of the effect of the content element on the resulting resource.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	Short description of the effect of the content element on the resulting resource.
Condition	ConditionType	01	A condition that determines if the resulting resource definition is relevant to a particular deployment.
Name	VariableExpressionType	01	Name of the resulting resource as known in the deployment environment. [DEPRECATED in SDD v2.0]
Version	VersionType	01	Version of the resulting resource.
FixName	xsd:string	0*	Name of a resulting fix.
Property	ResultingPropertyType	0*	A resulting property setting of the resulting resource.
Relationship	RelationshipType	0*	A relationship that will exist after creating or updating the resource.
	xsd:any	0*	
resourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	Reference to a resource in topology.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

## 2651 4.8.1.2 ResultingResourceType Property Usage Notes

- Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the effect of the content element on the
   resulting resource.
- 2655 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 2656 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- Condition: A *Condition* is used when the resulting resource will be created by the content element only when certain conditions exist in the deployment environment.
- 2659 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
- Name: The name of the resulting resource SHOULD be defined in the *ResultingResource* element and not in *Topology* when the content element installs the resulting resource. The resource name comes into existence when the resulting resource is created. When the content element updates the resulting resource without changing the resource name, *Name* SHOULD be defined in *Topology*. *Name* SHOULD NOT be defined in both places. If a resource name is defined in both *Topology* and *ResultingResource*, the values MUST match.
- 2666 See the VariableExpressionType section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 2667 [Starting with SDD v2.0, *Name* has been deprecated. See the *Property* element below for the 2668 appropriate method for specifying a resource identifier.]
- Version: This is the version of the resource after processing the content element's artifacts. Version
   SHOULD be defined for all resulting resources.
- For example, when update artifacts are processed, this version describes the resource after the update is complete.
- 2673 See the *VersionType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.10].

- FixName: Multiple *FixName* elements MAY be included to identify the resulting resource fixes that
   will exist once the content element is applied. The *FixName* SHOULD match the names of fixes that
   can be detected on the system.
- Property: *Property* elements SHOULD be included to identify property values of the resulting resource that will exist after applying the content element.
- Properties of the resulting resource SHOULD be defined in the *ResultingResource* element and not in
   *Topology*. They SHOULD NOT be defined in both places. If a property is defined in both *Topology* and *ResultingResource*, the values MUST match.
- 2682 If a resource can be identified by a property that represents the name for that resource, the SDD 2683 author SHOULD include a *Property* element and MUST set the value of *PropertyName* to "Name".
- 2684 See the *ResultingPropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.4].
- Relationship: *Relationship* elements SHOULD be included to identify relationships that will exist after applying the content element.
- 2687 See the *RelationshipType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.3].
- resourceRef: The resourceRef attribute MUST identify the resource in *Topology* that will be installed or updated when the defining content element is applied.

#### 2690 **4.8.2 ResultingChangeType**



#### 2691

#### 2692 **Figure 76: ResultingChangeType structure.**

*InstallableUnit* and *ConfigurationUnit* content elements can include zero or more *ResultingChange* elements that describe the key resources whose configuration is modified when the content element's artifacts are processed. *ResultingChange* elements refer to resources in *Topology* and define

characteristics of those resources that will become true when the content element is applied.

## 2697 **4.8.2.1 ResultingChangeType Property Summary**

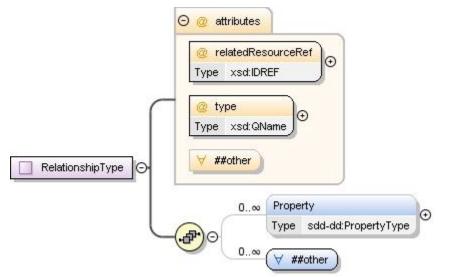
Name	Туре	*	Description
Description	DisplayTextType	01	Description of the effect of the content element on the changing resource.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	Short description of the effect of the content element on the changing resource.
Condition	ConditionType	01	A condition that determines if the resulting change definition is relevant to a particular deployment.
Name	VariableExpressionType	<del>01</del>	Name of the resulting resource as known in the deployment environment. [DEPRECATED in SDD v2.0]
Property	ResultingPropertyType	0*	A resulting property setting of the changing resource.
Relationship	RelationshipType	0*	Specifies a relationship(s) with another resource that will result from this deployment.
	xsd:any	0*	
resourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	Reference to the resource in topology that will be changed by application of the content element.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

## 2698 **4.8.2.2 ResultingChangeType Property Usage Notes**

- Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the effect of the content element on the
   changing resource.
- 2702 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 2703 See the *DescriptionGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.1].
- Condition: A *Condition* is used when the resulting change will be performed by applying the content
   element only when certain conditions exist in the deployment environment.
- 2706 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
- Name: The Name corresponds with the name of the changed resource as known in the deployment environment. Name SHOULD be defined in Topology and not in ResultingChange, because the name is not changed by processing the content elements artifacts. If Name is defined in both places, the values MUST match.
- 2711 See the VariableExpressionType section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 2712[Starting with SDD v2.0, Name has been deprecated. See the Property element below for the<br/>appropriate method for specifying a resource identifier.]
- Property: *Property* elements MAY be included to identify property values of the identified resource as they will exist after applying the content element.
- 2716 Properties defined in *ResultingChange* MUST be properties that are modified by processing the 2717 content element's artifacts.
- 2718 If a resource can be identified by a property that represents the name for that resource, the SDD 2719 author SHOULD include a *Property* element and MUST set the value of *PropertyName* to "Name".
- 2720 See the *ResultingPropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.4].
- Relationship: When application of the content element results in the creation or modification of
   relationships, the *Relationship* elements SHOULD be included to identify relationships as they will
   exist after application of the content element.
- 2724 See the *RelationshipType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.3].

- resourceRef: The *resourceRef* attribute MUST identify the resource whose configuration will be modified when the defining content element is applied.
- 2727 The value MUST reference the *id* of a resource specified in *Topology*.

## 2728 4.8.3 RelationshipType



2729

2730 Figure 77: RelationshipType structure.

## 2731 4.8.3.1 RelationshipType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
Property	PropertyType	0*	A property definition that further constrains the relationship.
	xsd:any	0*	
relatedResourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	The second resource in the relationship.
type	xsd:QName	1	The type of the relationship.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

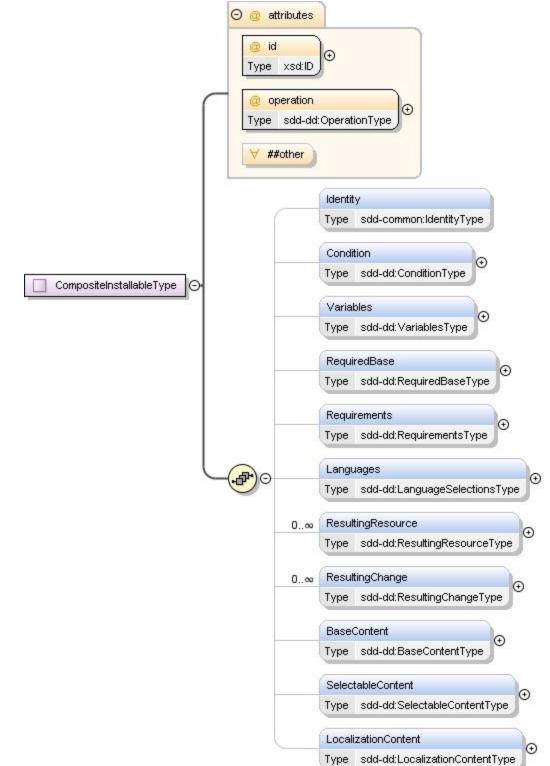
#### 2732 4.8.3.2 RelationshipType Property Usage Notes

- **Property**: This element MAY be used to provide additional information about the relationship.
- For example, a connectivity relationship might specify additional information such as the specific
  protocol used (for instance, TCP/IP) and/or particular characteristics of a protocol (for instance,
  port number).
- 2737 See the *PropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.3].
- relatedResourceRef: There are two resources in any relationship. The first is the resource defined in the resourceRef of the ResultingResource or RelationshipConstraint element that defines the Relationship element. The second resource is the one identified by relatedResourceRef.
- 2741 The value MUST reference the *id* of a resource specified in *Topology*.
- **type**: Values for relationship type are not defined by the SDD specification. This type may be specified in profiles [5.3].

#### **4.9 Composite Content Elements** 2744

- 2745 Composite content elements organize the content of an SDD but do not define artifacts used to deploy 2746 SDD content. There are three types of composite content elements: CompositeInstallable, CompositeUnit 2747 and CompositeLocalizationUnit.
- CompositeInstallable is used any time that more than one content element is defined in support of one 2748 2749 operation on the package; any time aggregation of SDDs is needed or any time the package includes 2750 selectable content.
- 2751 CompositeInstallable is the root of a content hierarchy that supports a single deployment lifecycle
- operation. It can define a base content hierarchy, a localization content hierarchy, and/or a selectable 2752
- content hierarchy and selection criteria. Base content defines content that is deployed by default. 2753
- 2754 Selectable content defines content that can be selected or not by the deployer. Localization content
- defines content that provides language support. One SDD can have more than one 2755
- CompositeInstallable-each supporting a different operation. 2756
- 2757 *CompositeUnit* is used to organize content elements within the base or selectable content hierarchies.
- CompositeUnits can define InstallableUnits, ConfigurationUnits, ContainedPackages and other 2758
- CompositeUnits. Requirements, conditions and variables that are common to all content elements defined 2759
- by the CompositeUnit can be defined on the CompositeUnit to avoid repetition. Within the selectable 2760
- 2761 content hierarchy, a CompositeUnit can provide an efficient means for selection of a set of related content 2762
- elements by a Feature.
- 2763 CompositeLocalizationUnit is described in the Localization section [4.13].

## 2764 4.9.1 CompositeInstallableType



2765

#### 2766 Figure 78: CompositeInstallableType structure.

A *CompositeInstallable* supports the definition of metadata about package content for one deployment lifecycle operation. One *CompositeInstallable* can be defined for each operation supported by the software package. When more than one *CompositeInstallable* is defined in an SDD, there MUST NOT be

2770 more than one *CompositeInstallable* in scope for a particular deployment defined for any one operation.

## 2771 **4.9.1.1 CompositeInstallableType Property Summary**

Name Type *		*	Description		
Identity	IdentityType	01	Human-understandable identity information about the CompositeInstallable.		
Condition	ConditionType	01	A condition that determines if the content of the CompositeInstallable is relevant to a particular deployment.		
Variables	VariablesType	01	Variables for use anywhere below the CompositeInstallable and in Topology.		
RequiredBase	RequiredBaseType	01	Resource or resources that can be updated by the CompositeInstallable.		
Requirements	RequirementsType	01	Requirements that must be met before successful application of the CompositeInstallable.		
Languages	LanguageSelectionsType	01	Defines required and selectable languages and groups of languages.		
ResultingResource	ResultingResourceType	0*	Resources that result from applying the CompositeInstallable.		
ResultingChange	ResultingChangeType	0*	Configuration changes that result from applying the CompositeInstallable.		
BaseContent	BaseContentType	01	Defines content describing the deployment of core resources.		
SelectableContent	SelectableContentType	01	Defines content describing the deployment of selectable resources.		
LocalizationContent	LocalizationContentType	01	Defines content whose sole purpose is to provide language support.		
id	xsd:ID	1	A unique identifier for the CompositeInstallable element.		
operation	OperationType	1	The deployment lifecycle operation described by the CompositeInstallable definition.		
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*			

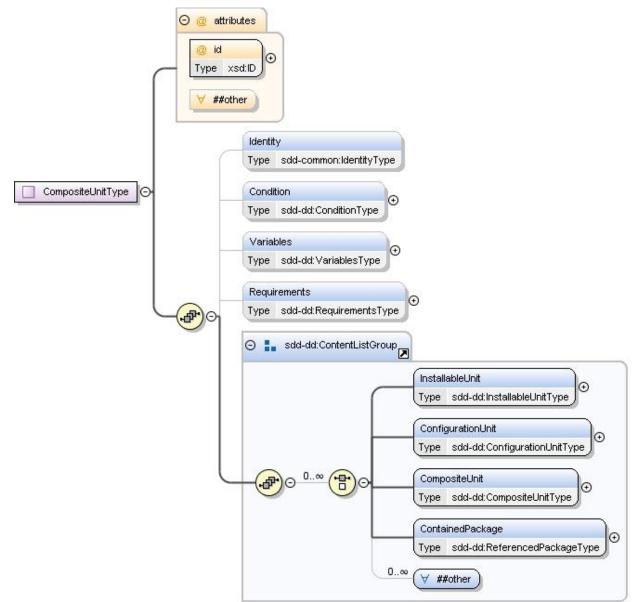
## 2772 4.9.1.2 CompositeInstallableType Property Usage Notes

- Identity: This identity MAY have values in common with the identity of a resulting resource created when artifacts defined by content of the composite are processed.
- 2775If the unit of packaging described by the CompositeInstallable is known to a package management2776system, the Identity elements SHOULD correspond to values associated with that package in the2777package management system.
- 2778 See the *IdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.4].
- Condition: When the condition defined in the *CompositeInstallable* is not met for a particular deployment, the *CompositeUnit* and all the content elements defined below the *CompositeUnit* are out of scope for that particular deployment.
- 2782 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
- **Variables**: Variables defined here are visible throughout the *CompositeInstallable* and in *Topology*.
- 2784 See the *VariablesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.5].

- 2785 RequiredBase: When a resource or resources corresponding to the overall software will be modified during deployment, that resource or those resources MAY be defined in the RequiredBase element. 2786 The RequiredBase definition represents a requirement that the described resource be available for 2787 modification to apply the single operation defined by the CompositeInstallable. When RequiredBase 2788 2789 is defined, the operation defined by CompositeInstallable MUST be one of the following: update, 2790 undo, uninstall, or repair. By specifying the required base separately from other requirements, it is 2791 possible for consumers of the SDD to easily determine if the base is available before processing 2792 other requirements.
- 2793 See the *RequiredBaseType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.8].
- Requirements: These are requirements that must be met regardless of what content is selected for deployment and which conditions within the content hierarchy evaluates to true.
- 2796 Requirements that apply only to a portion of the content SHOULD be defined at the point in the 2797 content hierarchy where they apply.
- All requirements specified on content elements that are in scope for a particular deployment MUST be met. This represents a logical "AND" of the requirements. Care should be taken by the SDD author to ensure that conflicting requirements cannot be in scope for the same deployment.
- 2801 See the *RequirementsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.1].
- Languages: When the SDD contains language support, the *Languages* element can be defined to describe the languages supported; which languages are required and which are selectable; and how language selections are grouped.
- Languages defined in the *Mandatory* element under *Languages* are always in scope. Languages are in scope if selected by the deployer.
- 2807The Languages element is used to declare the mandatory and optional language support available in2808the package. Languages whose support is deployed by LocalizationUnits in LocalizationContent2809MUST be defined as either a mandatory language or an optional language. In addition, languages2810whose support is deployed along with other content by InstallableUnits in BaseContent or2811SelectableContent SHOULD be defined as a mandatory language.
- 2812 See the LanguageSelectionsType section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.4].
- ResultingResource: The software whose deployment is described by the SDD can be described in the *CompositeInstallable's ResultingResource* element. This software may consist of many resources that are described in the *ResultingResource* elements of the *InstallableUnits* and/or *LocalizationUnits* defined within the *CompositeInstallable*.
- 2817 See the *ResultingResourceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.1].
- ResultingChange: Configuration changes that result from deployment regardless of selected content
   or condition evaluation can be described in the *CompositeInstallable's ResultingChange* element.
- 2820 Note that a *ResultingChange* is a change that is made to an existing resource. This is in contrast with 2821 *ResultingResource*, which describes newly created resources.
- 2822 See the *ResultingChangeType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.2].
- BaseContent: The base content hierarchy defines content elements that are in scope by default.
   These content elements MAY be conditioned out based on characteristics of the deployment environment, but are not optional from the deployer's perspective.
- 2826 See the *BaseContentType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.11.1].
- SelectableContent: Content that is selected by feature MUST be defined in the selectable content hierarchy. *Groups* and *Features* that select this content are also defined within *SelectableContent*.
- 2829 See the SelectableContentType section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.1].
- LocalizationContent: All LocalizationUnits and ContainedLocalizationPackages MUST be defined in the LocalizationContent hierarchy. Each LocalizationUnit contains information about the languages it supports and the resources it localizes. This information is evaluated to determine if the LocalizationUnit is in scope for a particular deployment.

- Each LocalizationUnit and ContainedLocalizationPackage defined in LocalizationContent MAY
   support any combination of Mandatory and Optional languages and can localize any combination of
   base and selectable resources, as well as resources already deployed.
- 2837 Some language support may be deployed incidentally by artifacts in an *InstallableUnit* along with 2838 deployment of other solution content. *LocalizationContent* holds only content elements whose sole 2839 purpose is to provide language support.
- LocalizationContent supports advanced management of language support, including definition of
   mandatory and optional languages and support of localization materials with a lifecycle that is
   somewhat independent of the resources localized. When an SDD author has no need for advanced
   management of language support, all language support MAY be delivered with other content in
   *InstallableUnits*.
- 2845 See the *LocalizationContentType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.1].
- id: The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating
   log and trace messages.
- operation: This is the operation that may be applied to the SDD package whose metadata is described by the CompositeInstallable.
- 2850 See the *OperationType* section for enumeration values and their meaning [4.3.7].

## 2851 4.9.2 CompositeUnitType



#### 2852

#### 2853 **Figure 79: CompositeUnitType structure.**

2854 The CompositeUnit element is used to organize content elements within the base or selectable content 2855 hierarchies. It can define any number of InstallableUnits, ConfigurationUnits, ContainedPackages and other CompositeUnits. Composite units assist in organizing the deployment package. A composite unit 2856 2857 can provide a convenient way to specify variables, requirements, conditions and other information that applies to every content element defined below the composite unit. Within the selectable content 2858 2859 hierarchy, composite units can be used to group content elements that are selected by feature sets or 2860 groups. When a feature containing a composite unit is selected, all its child content elements are selected 2861 by association. Organization of content within a composite unit does not imply any relationships among 2862 the resources that result from deployment of the composite content.

## 2863 4.9.2.1 CompositeUnitType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description	
Identity	IdentityType	01	Human-understandable identity information about the	e
sdd-v2.0-csd02 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.			Standards Track Work Product	16 May 2011 Page 131 of 187

			CompositeUnit.
Condition	ConditionType	01	A condition that determines if the CompositeUnit and its child content elements are relevant to a particular deployment.
Variables	VariablesType	01	Variables for use within the CompositeUnit's and its child content elements' requirement and artifact definitions.
Requirements	RequirementsType	01	Requirements that must be met prior to successful processing of any of the CompositeUnit's content.
InstallableUnit	InstallableUnitType	0*	An InstallableUnit that is part of the composite content.
ConfigurationUnit	ConfigurationUnitType	0*	A ConfigurationUnit that is part of the composite content.
CompositeUnit	CompositeUnitType	0*	A CompositeUnit that organizes a subset of the composite's content.
ContainedPackage	ReferencedPackageType	0*	A ContainedPackage that is part of the composite content.
	xsd:any	0*	
id	xsd:ID	1	An identifier for the CompositeUnit scoped to the deployment descriptor.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

## 2864 4.9.2.2 CompositeUnitType Property Usage Notes

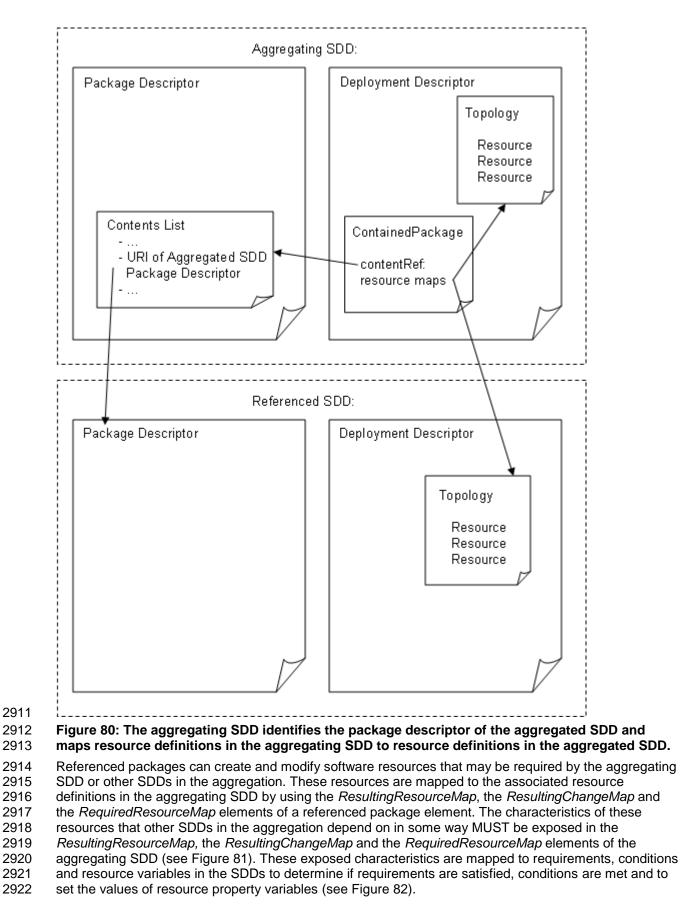
- Identity: This identity MAY have values in common with the identity of a resulting resource created when artifacts defined by content of the composite are processed.
- If the unit of packaging described by the *CompositeUnit* is known to a package management system,
   some of the identity elements MAY correspond to values associated with that package in the package
   management system.
- 2870 See the *IdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.4].
- 2871 Condition: When the condition defined in the *CompositeInstallable* is not met for a particular deployment, the *CompositeUnit* and all the content elements defined below the *CompositeUnit* are out of scope for that particular deployment.
- 2874 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
- Variables: Variables defined here are visible within the *CompositeUnit* and every content element defined below the *CompositeUnit*.
- 2877These variables are in scope for a particular deployment only if the *CompositeUnit* is in scope for that2878deployment.
- 2879 See the VariablesType section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.5].
- Requirements: These are requirements that must be met before any of the artifacts in the CompositeUnit hierarchy can be processed.
- 2882These requirements are in scope for a particular deployment only if the CompositeUnit is in scope for<br/>that deployment.2883that deployment.
- 2884 The operation defined for a *Requirement* defined in a *CompositeUnit* MUST be the same as the 2885 operation defined by the *CompositeInstallable* containing the *CompositeUnit*.
- 2886 See the *RequirementsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.1].
- **InstallableUnit**: See the *InstallableUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.1].
- ConfigurationUnit: See the ConfigurationUnitType section for structure and additional usage details
   [4.3.2].
- 2890 CompositeUnit: A CompositeUnit element MAY contain child CompositeUnits.

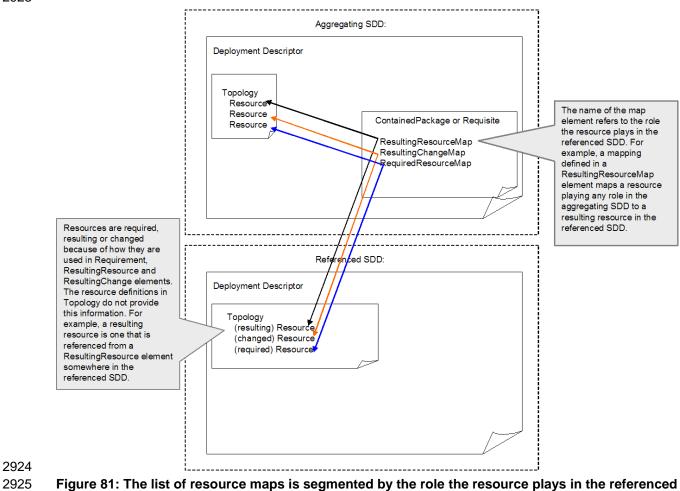
- ContainedPackage: See the *ReferencedPackageType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.10.1].
- id: The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating
   log and trace messages.

## 2895 4.10 Aggregation

2896 SDD packages can aggregate other SDD packages. Metadata about the aggregation is defined in 2897 ContainedPackage, ContainedLocalizationPackage and Requisite elements. ContainedPackage elements are content elements that can be defined anywhere in the base and selectable content 2898 2899 hierarchies. ContainedLocalizationPackages are content elements that can be defined in the localization 2900 content hierarchy. Requisites are packages that can be deployed, if necessary, to satisfy requirements in 2901 the aggregating SDD. They are not content of the SDD package. The type of all three of these elements is ReferencedPackageType. The term referenced package is used in this specification when referring to 2902 2903 these elements as a group. The term referenced SDD is used when referring to any aggregated SDD.

When an SDD aggregates other SDDs, the package descriptors of the aggregated SDDs are included in the *Contents* list in the package descriptor of the aggregating SDD (see Figure 80). The referenced package elements in the deployment descriptor identify a referenced SDD package by referencing its package descriptor definition in *Contents*. Each referenced package element can further constrain the deployment of the referenced SDD by defining additional requirements; by mapping resources defined in the aggregating SDD to those defined in the referenced SDD; and by determining feature selections for deployment of the referenced SDD.

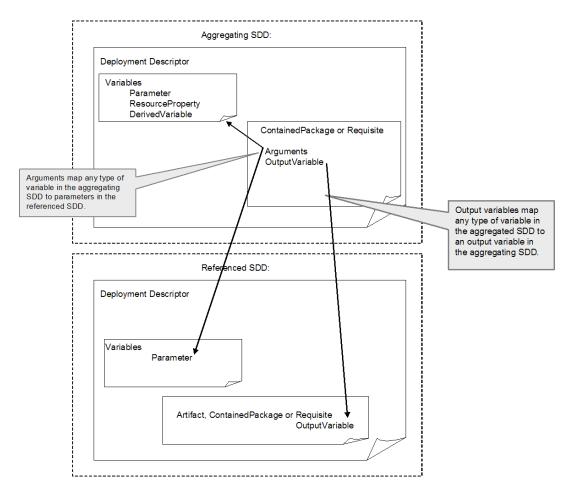




2926

SDD.

2923



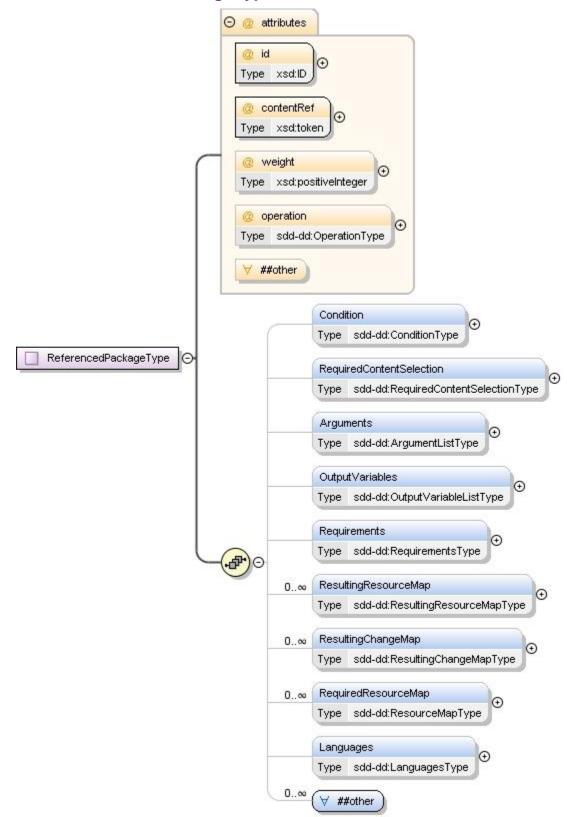
#### 2928

# Figure 82: Arguments and OutputVariables of ReferencedPackageType map variables in the aggregating SDD to variables in the referenced SDD.

- 2931 It is important to remember that all *id* attributes MUST be unique within a *DeploymentDescriptor* and
- 2932 MUST be unique across an aggregation of SDDs, including referenced SDDs.

sdd-v2.0-csd02 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. Standards Track Work Product

## 2933 4.10.1 ReferencedPackageType



#### 2935 **Figure 83: ReferencedPackageType structure.**

2934

2936 A referenced package identifies an aggregated SDD and describes the conditions of its aggregation. 2937 ReferencedPackageType provides the type definition for ContainedPackage and Requisite elements. ContainedPackage elements identify an SDD package that is treated like a content element of the 2938 defining SDD. Requisite elements identify an SDD package that can be deployed, if necessary, to satisfy 2939 2940 resource constraints.

Name	Туре	*	Description
Condition	ConditionType	01	A condition that determines if the referenced package is relevant to a particular deployment.
RequiredContentSelection	RequiredContentSelectionType	01	A list of groups and features that MUST be selected when the referenced package is deployed.
Arguments	ArgumentListType	01	Inputs to the reference package.
OutputVariables	OutputVariableListType	01	Outputs from the referenced package.
Requirements	RequirementsType	01	Additional requirements for deploying the referenced package as part of the aggregation.
ResultingResourceMap	ResultingResourceMap ResultingResourceMapType		Maps resulting resources in the referenced package to resources in the referencing package and exposes properties of the resulting resource.
ResultingChangeMap	ResultingChangeMapType	0*	Maps changed resources defined in the referenced package to resources in the referencing package and exposes changed properties of the resource.
RequiredResourceMap	ResourceMapType	0*	Maps required resources in the referenced package to resources in the referencing package.
Languages	LanguagesType	01	Languages supported by the referenced package.
	xsd:any	0*	
id	xsd:ID	1	Identifier for the referenced package element that is unique within the deployment descriptor.
contentRef xsd:token		1	Reference to the identifier of the package Content defined in the package descriptor which identifies the package descriptor of the referenced package.
weight	xsd:positiveInteger	01	The time required to process the referenced package relative to all artifacts and other referenced packages in the SDD.
operation	OperationType	01	Specifies which operation in the referenced SDD is performed.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

#### 4.10.1.1 ReferencedPackageType Property Summary 2941

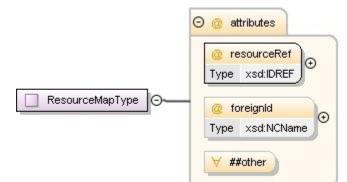
#### 4.10.1.2 ReferencedPackageType Property Usage Notes 2942

- 2943 Condition: A Condition is used when the ReferencedPackage's content should only be deployed . 2944 when certain conditions exist in the deployment environment.
- 2945 See the ConditionType section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].

- RequiredContentSelection: Certain *Groups* or *Features* may need to be selected when deploying
   the referenced package. These can be identified in the *RequiredContentSelection* element.
- If one particular aggregated SDD requires the selection of different groups or features, depending on
   other choices made during a particular deployment, different *Requisite* or *ContainedPackage* elements can be defined in a way that will cause the correct combination of *Groups* and *Features* to
   be used in each situation.
- 2952 See the *RequiredContentSelectionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.13].
- Arguments: Arguments are used to provide values for input variables defined in the deployment descriptor of the referenced package. The argument name specified MUST reference the *id* of a parameter in the referenced package.
- 2956 See the *ArgumentListType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.8].
- OutputVariables: The output variable mapping can be used to set variables to outputs created by processing the referenced SDD. The output variables in the referenced package are mapped to output variables in the aggregating SDD.
- 2960 Each output variable value specified MUST reference the *id* of an output variable in the referenced 2961 package. This can be an output variable from an artifact or an output variable from a referenced 2962 package defined within the referenced SDD.
- 2963 See the OutputVariableListType section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.10].
- Requirements: When the aggregating SDD has stricter requirements for the use of the referenced
   SDD than are defined by the referenced SDD itself, those requirements can be defined in
   *Requirements*. This is not intended to repeat requirements expressed in the referenced SDD, but
   rather to add additional stricter requirements.
- 2968 Requirements expressed in the referenced SDD need to be satisfied, in addition to the requirements 2969 expressed in the *Requisite* or *ContainedPackage* element of the aggregating SDD.
- 2970 Requirements expressed in the aggregating SDD MUST NOT conflict with requirements expressed in 2971 the referenced SDD. The requirements specified MUST further constrain the referenced package.
- 2972 See the *RequirementsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.1].
- ResultingResourceMap: Resources created by the referenced package may be resources that are defined in the aggregating SDD. The *ResultingResourceMap* is used to identify the correspondence between resource definitions in the aggregating SDD and resulting resource definitions in the aggregated SDD.
- 2977 Characteristics of the resulting resources MAY be exposed in the *ResultingResourceMap* element. 2978 *ResourceConstraints* defined on those resources anywhere in the aggregation are mapped to the 2979 resource properties exposed in the resulting maps of the referenced package to determine if the 2980 referenced package will satisfy the constraints. Each individual constraint is considered met by the 2981 referenced package if a property exposed in the resulting resource map that is in scope for the 2982 particular deployment satisfies the constraint.
- 2983For example, a property constraint in a ResourceConstraint element states that the property2984named "FileAttributes" has the value "Writeable". The resourceRef in the ResourceConstraint2985identifies a resource defined in Topology that is also identified in the ResultingResourceMap of a2986Requisite or ContainedPackage element that is in scope for the particular deployment. If the2987ResultingResourceMap element contains a statement that the property named "FileAttributes"2988has the value "Writeable", then the ResourceConstraint is met when the Requisite or2989ContainedPackage is deployed.
- 2990This same logic applies to ResourceConstraints in aggregated packages. If the SDD in the preceding2991example also aggregates another SDD and maps the same resource to a required resource in that2992aggregated SDD, then all ResourceConstraints in the aggregated SDD are met only if the2993ResultingResourceMap of the referenced SDD that creates that resource contains a Version or2994Property definition that satisfies the constraint.
- 2995 See the *ResultingResourceMapType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.10.3].

- ResultingChangeMap: Resources configured by the referenced package may be resources that are defined in the aggregating SDD. The *ResultingChangeMap* is used to identify the correspondence between resource definitions in the aggregating SDD and changed resources defined in *ResultingChange* elements of the aggregated SDD.
- 3000Characteristics of resources that are changed by the referenced SDD MAY be exposed in the3001ResultingChangeMap. These are correlated with ResourceConstraints on the changed resource in3002the same manner as the exposed characteristics of a resulting resource. See the property usage3003notes for ResultingResourceMap above.
- 3004 See the *ResultingChangeMapType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.10.4].
- RequiredResourceMap: When a resource required by the aggregated SDD is a resource also defined in the aggregating SDD, the *RequiredResourceMap* is used to identify the correspondence.
   This element is a simple mapping of a resource in one SDD to a resource in another. There is no need to expose characteristics of the resource because it is not created or modified by the referenced package.
- 3010One resource MAY be required, resulting, changed, all three or any combination of these within one3011SDD. When a resource in the referenced SDD plays more than one role, the mapping MUST be3012repeated everywhere it applies. This allows exposure of all the created or modified properties in the3013ResultingChangeMap and ResultingResourceMap. In this situation-when one resource in the3014referenced SDD plays more than one of the roles identified earlier (required, resulting or changed)-all3015mappings MUST be to the same resource in the aggregating SDD. Only the exposed resulting and3016changed properties differ.
- 3017 See the *ResourceMapType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.10.2].
- Languages: Languages supported by the referenced package MAY be identified here. This list does not identify mandatory versus optional languages; it is for informational purposes only. The SDD author is not limiting use of the referenced package to deployments where all in-scope languages are found in this list. There may be cases where aggregated packages are deployed even though they cannot support all of the languages supported by the aggregation as a whole.
- 3023 Each language specified MUST match a language in the referenced package.
- 3024 See the *LanguagesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.6].
- id: The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating log and trace messages.
- contentRef: The package descriptor of an SDD that aggregates other SDDs, either through
   *ContainedPackage* elements or *Requisite* elements, will list the package descriptor files of the
   aggregated SDDs in its content list. The *contentRef* attribute of a referenced package element MUST
   be a reference to the *id* of a *Content* element in the aggregating SDD's package descriptor that
   defines the aggregated package descriptor.
- weight: Defining weights for all artifacts and referenced packages in an SDD provides useful
   information to software that manages deployment. The weight of the referenced package refers to the
   relative time taken to deploy the referenced package with respect to other packages in this SDD.
- 3035For example, if the referenced package takes twice as long to deploy as a particular install artifact3036whose weight is "4", then the weight of the referenced package would be "8". The weight numbers3037have no meaning in isolation and do not describe actual time elapsed. They simply provide an3038estimate of relative time.
- operation: The referenced SDD may support more than one deployment lifecycle operation. The operation attribute MUST include the operations that are applicable when this is the case.
- 3041 See the *OperationType* section for enumeration values and their meaning [4.3.7].

## 3042 4.10.2 ResourceMapType



#### 3043

#### 3044 Figure 84: ResourceMapType structure.

3045 *ResourceMapType* is used in the definition of elements that map resources in an SDD to resources in a 3046 referenced SDD. The purpose of a resource map is to identify when two resources in separate SDDs 3047 MUST resolve to the same resource instance during any particular deployment. The characteristics of a

- 3048 mapped resource that are defined in the topology sections of the two SDDs MUST NOT conflict.
- 3049 For example, if a *Property* definition is included for the same property in both SDDs, the value MUST 3050 be the same.
- 3051 Additional characteristics of a mapped resource may be constrained by *Requirements* or *Conditions* in
- either SDD. All constraints on a mapped resource that are in scope for a particular deployment MUSTNOT conflict.
- Resources that are not mapped between the two SDDs MAY resolve to the same instance when their
   characteristics defined in topology do not conflict and when the constraints in scope for any particular
   deployment do not conflict.
- 3057 The RequiredResourceMap, ResultingResourceMap and ResultingChangeMap elements all use
- 3058 *ResourceMapType*, either directly or as a base type that is extended.

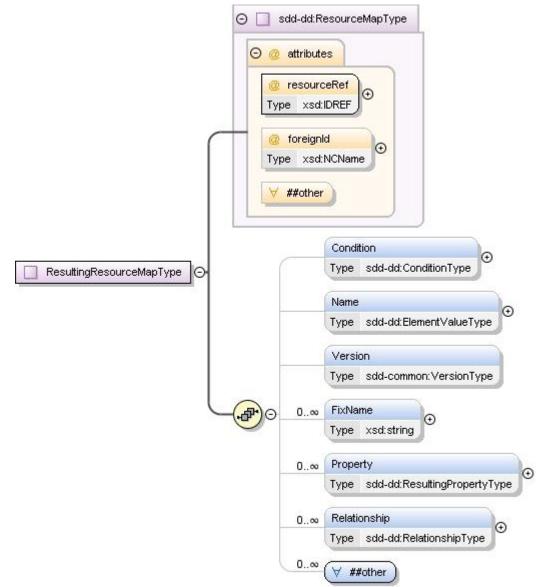
#### 3059 4.10.2.1 ResourceMapType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
resourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	Reference to a resource defined in the deployment descriptor.
foreignID	xsd:NCName	01	Reference to a resource defined in a referenced deployment descriptor.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

#### 3060 **4.10.2.2 ResourceMapType Property Usage Notes**

- resourceRef: The value of the *resourceRef* MUST be set to the *id* of the resource in the SDD that is
   mapped to a resource in a referenced SDD.
- foreignID: The value MUST reference the *id* of a resource in the referenced package. This is the
   resource in the referenced SDD that MUST resolve to the same resource instance as the resource
   identified in *resourceRef*.

## 3066 4.10.3 ResultingResourceMapType



#### 3067 3068 Figure 85: ResultingResourceMapType structure.

3069 ResultingResourceMapType defines an element type that maps resources that result from deployment of 3070 a referenced SDD to a resource in the referencing SDD. In addition to identifying the two resources that 3071 MUST resolve to the same resource instance, the resulting resource map allows characteristics of the 3072 resulting resource to be exposed. Constraints might be defined on the mapped resource in the 3073 referencing SDD or any referenced SDD. These constraints can be evaluated by comparing the 3074 constraint to the characteristics that are exposed in the resulting resource map. The resulting resource 3075 map MUST expose sufficient characteristics of the resulting resource to enable the evaluation of 3076 constraints on that resource.

3077For example, suppose that an SDD defines a resource with id="Database" in its topology. The3078solution can work with Database\_Product\_A or Database\_Product\_B. Database\_Product\_A is3079created by a referenced SDD defined in a *Requisites* element. The referencing SDD contains3080*Requirements* and/or *Conditions* that have *Alternatives* for each of the two alternative database3081products. All constraints on the Database resource that apply to Database\_Product\_A must be3082satisfied by a resource characteristic that is exposed in the *ResultingResourceMap* element of the3083*Requisite* element that references the SDD that deploys Database\_Product\_A.

## 3084 4.10.3.1 ResultingResourceMapType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
	[extends] ResourceMapType		See the ResourceMapType section for additional properties [4.10.2].
Condition	ConditionType	01	A condition that determines if the resulting resource definition is relevant to a particular deployment.
Name	VariableExpressionType	<del>01</del>	The name of the resource created or updated by the referenced SDD. [DEPRECATED in SDD v2.0]
Version	VersionType	01	The version of the resource created or updated by the referenced SDD.
FixName	xsd:string	0*	Names of fixes to the mapped resource that are created by the referenced SDD.
Property	ResultingPropertyType	0*	Properties set when the mapped resource is created or updated by the referenced SDD.
Relationship	RelationshipType	0*	Relationship that will exist after creating or updating the resource.
	xsd:any	0*	

## 3085 4.10.3.2 ResultingResourceMapType Property Usage Notes

3086 See the *ResourceMapType* section for details about the inherited attributes and elements [4.10.2].

Condition: A *Condition* is used when the resulting resource will be created by the referenced package only when certain conditions exist in the deployment environment.

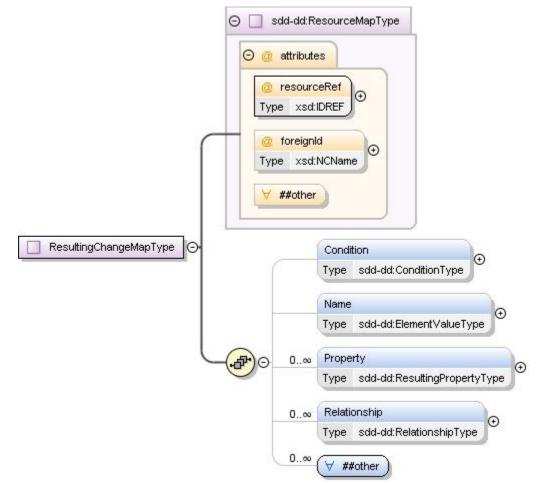
#### 3089 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].

3090 Name: The Name of the resulting resource created or updated by the referenced SDD MUST be defined if it is not defined elsewhere and there are constraints on this resource that contain a Name 3091 element. "Defined elsewhere" means defined in the topology of the referencing SDD or in the 3092 topology of any other referenced SDD for a resource that is also mapped to the same resource. 3093 "Constraints on this resource" means a constraint that applies to the particular instantiation of the 3094 resource that is created or updated by the referenced SDD, for example a constraint that needs to 3095 successfully map to the referenced SDD for the referenced SDD to be used in a particular 3096 3097 deployment.

- 3098 See the VariableExpressionType section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 3099[Starting with SDD v2.0, Name has been deprecated. See the Property element below for the<br/>appropriate method for specifying a resource identifier.]
- Version: The Version of the resulting resource created or updated by the referenced SDD MUST be defined if it is not defined elsewhere and version constraints are defined on this resource. "Defined elsewhere" means defined in the topology of the referencing SDD or in the topology of any other referenced SDD for a resource that is also mapped to the same resource.
- 3105 See the *VersionType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.10].
- FixName: One or more names of fixes to the resulting resource created or updated by the referenced
   SDD MUST be defined if they are not defined elsewhere and version constraints are defined on this
   resource that include fix names. (See the usage note for *Version* above for a definition of "defined
   elsewhere".)
- Property: A *Property* of the resulting resource created or updated by the referenced SDD MUST be defined if it is not defined elsewhere and property constraints are defined on this property. (See the usage note for *Version* above for a definition of "defined elsewhere".)
- 3113 If a resource can be identified by a property that represents the name for that resource, the SDD
   3114 author SHOULD include a *Property* element and MUST set the value of *PropertyName* to "Name".

- 3115 See the *ResultingPropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.4].
- Relationship: Any number of *Relationship* elements can be included to identify relationships that will
   exist after applying the referenced package.
- 3118 See the *RelationshipType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.3].

## 3119 4.10.4 ResultingChangeMapType



#### 3120

#### 3121 Figure 86: ResultingChangeMapType structure.

3122 ResultingChangeMapType is similar to ResultingResourceMapType. It defines an element type that maps resources that are changed by deployment of the referenced SDD to a resource in the referencing SDD. 3123 3124 In addition to identifying the two resources that MUST resolve to the same resource instance, the 3125 resulting change map allows characteristics of the modified resource to be exposed. Constraints may be 3126 defined on the mapped resource in the referencing SDD or any referenced SDD. These constraints can be evaluated by comparing the constraint to the characteristics that are exposed in the resulting change 3127 map. The resulting change map MUST expose sufficient characteristics of the resulting change to enable 3128 the evaluation of constraints on that resource. 3129

For example, suppose that an SDD defines a resource with id="OS" in its topology. The solution can work with Windows or Linux. Linux is configured by a referenced SDD defined in a *Requisites* element. The referencing SDD contains *Requirements* and/or *Conditions* that have *Alternatives* for Windows and for Linux. All constraints on the modified characteristics of Linux must be satisfied by a resource characteristic that are exposed in the *ResultingChangeMap* element of the *Requisite* element that references the SDD that configures Linux.

# 3136 **4.10.4.1 ResultingChangeMapType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
	[extends] ResourceMapType		See the ResourceMapType section for additional properties [4.10.2].
Condition	ConditionType	01	A condition that determines if the resulting change definition is relevant to a particular deployment.
Name	VariableExpressionType	<del>01</del>	The name of the modified resource. [DEPRECATED in SDD v2.0]
Property	ResultingPropertyType	0*	A modified property of the resource.
Relationship	RelationshipType	0*	Relationship that will exist after the change is applied to the resource.
	xsd:any	0*	

# 3137 **4.10.4.2 ResultingChangeMapType Property Usage Notes**

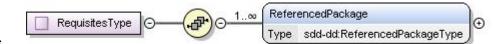
3138 See the *ResourceMapType* section for details about the inherited attributes and elements [4.10.2].

**Condition**: A *Condition* is used when the resource mapped from the external package will be changed only when certain conditions exist in the deployment environment.

3141 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].

- Name: The Name of the resource that is modified by the referenced SDD is defined here to assist
   with identifying the resource instance that is changed. It is not an indication that the resource name
   itself is modified by the referenced SDD. If resource characteristics defined in the topology of any
   SDD defining a resource mapped to the changed resource are sufficient to identify the resource, then
   *Name* SHOULD NOT be defined in the *ResultingChangeMap*.
- 3147 See the VariableExpressionType section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.1].
- 3148 [Starting with SDD v2.0, *Name* has been deprecated. See the Property element below for the 3149 appropriate method for specifying a resource identifier.]
- Property: A modified property MUST be exposed in a *ResultingChangeMap* if it is not defined elsewhere and property constraints are defined on the modified property. "Defined elsewhere" means defined in the topology of the referencing SDD or in the topology of any other referenced SDD for a resource that is also mapped to the same resource. "Constraints on the modified property" means a property constraint that applies to the particular instantiation of the resource that is modified by the referenced SDD; for example, a constraint that must map to the referenced SDD, if the referenced SDD is to be used in a particular deployment.
- 3157 If a resource can be identified by a property that represents the name for that resource, the SDD 3158 author SHOULD include a *Property* element and MUST set the value of *PropertyName* to "Name".
- 3159 See the *ResultingPropertyType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.2.4].
- Relationship: *Relationship* elements SHOULD be included to identify relationships that will exist after
   the application of the referenced package.
- Relationships that need to be known by the aggregate MUST be mapped. Relationships need to be known when they are referred to in one or more resource constraints.
- 3164 See the *RelationshipType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.3].

# 3165 4.10.5 RequisitesType



- 3166
- 3167 Figure 87: RequisitesType structure.

- The *Requisites* element contains a list of references to SDD packages that can be used to satisfy one or more of the requirements defined by content elements. The definition of a requisite does not imply that it must be used: apply that it is available for use if paeded
- 3170 must be used; only that it is available for use if needed.
- Requisite definitions can map values and resources defined in the SDD to inputs and resources definedin the requisite SDD.

# 3173 4.10.5.1 RequisitesType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
ReferencedPackage	ReferencedPackageType	1*	An SDD package that can, but is not required to, be deployed to satisfy a requirement.

### 3174 4.10.5.2 RequisitesType Property Usage Notes

ReferencedPackage: See the *ReferencedPackageType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.10.1].

# 3177 **4.11 Base Content**

3178 Base content is the default content for the deployment lifecycle operation associated with the

3179 *CompositeInstallable* that contains the base content. This is content that is deployed whenever the 3180 associated operation is performed on the SDD package. Base content may be conditioned on

3181 characteristics of the deployment environment but it is not selectable by the deployer.

Resources associated with base content for one operation may be different from resources associated with base content for a different operation in the same SDD package.

For example, base content in the *CompositeInstallable* for the configuration operation may configure resources that were created by selectable content in the *CompositeInstallable* for the install operation. In this example, the configuration is in base content because it must be done if the

3187 resource exists. It is not selectable by the deployer during the configuration operation.

#### sdd-dd:ContentListGroup InstallableUnit Ð Type sdd-dd:InstallableUnitType ConfigurationUnit Type sdd-dd:ConfigurationUnitType CompositeUnit BaseContentType Ŧ Type sdd-dd:CompositeUnitType ContainedPackage Ð Type sdd-dd:ReferencedPackageType 0..00 ∀ ##other

#### 3189

3188

#### 3190 Figure 88: BaseContentType structure.

4.11.1 BaseContentType

3191 The *BaseContent* hierarchy defines the default content for the deployment operation described by the

3192 *CompositeInstallable*. This content MAY be conditioned.

### 3193 4.11.1.1 BaseContentType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
InstallableUnit	InstallableUnitType	0*	An InstallableUnit that defines base content.
ConfigurationUnit	ConfigurationUnitType	0*	A ConfigurationUnit that defines base configuration content.
CompositeUnit	CompositeUnitType	0*	A CompositeUnit that organizes base content.
ContainedPackage	ReferencedPackageType	0*	An SDD whose content is considered to be base content in the context of this aggregation.
	xsd:any	0*	

### 3194 **4.11.1.2 BaseContentType Property Usage Notes**

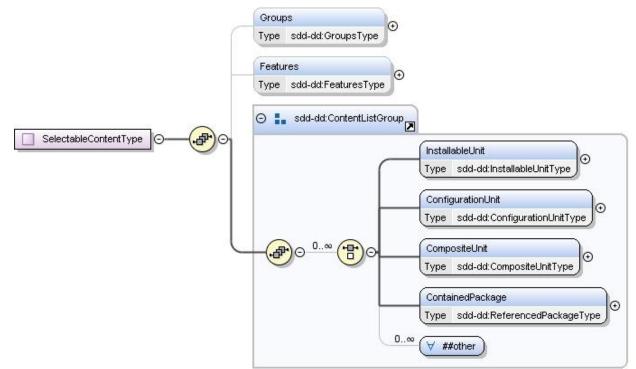
- **InstallableUnit**: See the *InstallableUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.1].
- ConfigurationUnit: See the ConfigurationUnitType section for structure and additional usage details
   [4.3.2].
- 3198 CompositeUnit: See the CompositeUnitType section for structure and additional usage details
   3199 [4.9.2].
- ContainedPackage: See the *ReferencedPackageType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.10.1].

# 3202 4.12 Content Selectability

The SDD author MAY define selectable subsets of content using *Groups* and *Features*. Selectability, as used in the SDD, is a characteristic of the deployment lifecycle operation and the package. The decision to provide selectability for one operation in one package has no semantic relationship to the selectability provided in another package related to the same software. It also has no semantic relationship to the selectability provided for a different operation within the same package.

3208 For example, when the SDD author chooses to create a feature in a maintenance package, that 3209 feature is designed to allow selectable application of the maintenance, not to reflect the original set of 3210 features for the base content.

# 3211 4.12.1 SelectableContentType



3212

#### 3213 Figure 89: SelectableContentType structure.

- 3214 Content elements defined here make up the selectable content hierarchy. These elements are selected
- 3215 via Groups and Features also defined under SelectableContent.

#### 3216 4.12.1.1 SelectableContentType Property Summary

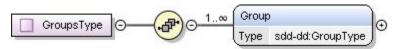
Name	Туре	*	Description
Groups	GroupsType	01	Groups of features that can be selected as a unit.
Features	FeaturesType	01	A definition of user-selectable content.
InstallableUnit	InstallableUnitType	0*	An InstallableUnit that defines selectable content.
ConfigurationUnit	ConfigurationUnitType	0*	A ConfigurationUnit that defines selectable configuration.
CompositeUnit	CompositeUnitType	0*	A CompositeUnit that organizes content elements that define selectable content.
ContainedPackage	ReferencedPackageType	0*	An SDD package whose content is selectable in the context of the aggregating SDD.
	xsd:any	0*	

### 3217 4.12.1.2 SelectableContentType Property Usage Notes

- Groups: Groups can be used by the SDD author to define a convenient way for deployers to select a group of features.
- 3220 "Typical" and "Custom" are examples of groups that are commonly presented in installation3221 interfaces.
- 3222 See the *GroupsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.2].

- Features: Features can be used to organize optional functionality into meaningful selections.
   Features should be meaningful from the deployer's point of view.
- 3225 See the *FeaturesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.4].
- **InstallableUnit**: See the *InstallableUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.1].
- ConfigurationUnit: See the ConfigurationUnitType section for structure and additional usage details
   [4.3.2].
- CompositeUnit: See the CompositeUnitType section for structure and additional usage details
   [4.9.2].
- ContainedPackage: See the *ReferencedPackageType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.10.1].

### 3233 **4.12.2 GroupsType**



#### 3234

#### 3235 Figure 90: Groups structure.

3236 *GroupsType* is used in *SelectableContent* to provide a list of one or more *Group* elements.

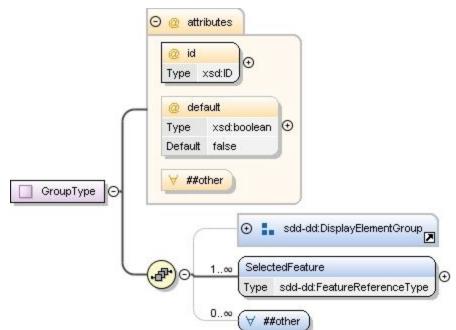
### 3237 4.12.2.1 GroupsType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
Group	GroupType	1*	A group of features that can be selected together.

#### 3238 4.12.2.2 GroupsType Property Usage Notes

- **Group**: Associating features in a *Group* is based on the characteristics of the package and the ways in which the SDD author chooses to expose function variability to the deployer.
- 3241One example is a "Typical" group that allows easy selection of the most common grouping of3242features, along with a "Custom" group that allows an advanced user to select from among all3243features. Another example is a "Client" group that selects features that deploy the client software3244for an application, along with a "Server" group that selects features that deploy the server3245software for the same application.
- 3246 If alternative sets of selections are desired, Groups MUST be used to define these sets. Zero or one3247 set can be selected for any particular deployment.
- 3248 See the *GroupType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.3].

# 3249 **4.12.3 GroupType**



3250

#### 3251 Figure 91: GroupType structure.

3252 *GroupType* provides the type definition for each *Group* element in *SelectableContent's* list of *Groups*. For 3253 a particular deployment, zero or one groups may be selected by the deployer.

# 3254 4.12.3.1 GroupType Property Summary

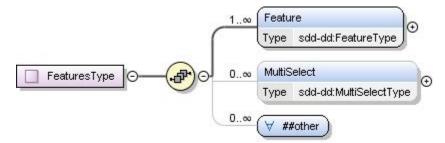
Name	Туре	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	01	A human-readable name for the group.
Description	DisplayTextType	01	A human-readable description of the group.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	A human-readable short description of the group.
SelectedFeature	FeatureReferenceType	1*	A feature that is part of the group.
	xsd:any	0*	
id	xsd:ID	1	An identifier of the group that is unique within the descriptor.
default	xsd:boolean	01	Indicates that the group is selected by default when no selections are provided by the deployer.
			**default value="false"
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

### 3255 4.12.3.2 GroupType Property Usage Notes

- 3256 DisplayName: This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it
   3257 MUST provide a label for the group.
- 3258 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the group.
- 3261 The Description element MUST be defined if the ShortDescription element is defined.

- 3262 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- SelectedFeature: Each SelectedFeature is considered selected if inputs identify the group as selected.
- 3265 Selection of a nested feature causes its parent feature to be selected.
- 3266 See the *FeatureReferenceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.8].
- id: The group's *id* may be used to refer to the group when aggregating the SDD into another SDD.
   The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating log and trace messages.
- 3270 default: Multiple default *Groups* MUST NOT be defined.

#### 3271 **4.12.4 FeaturesType**



#### 3272

#### 3273 Figure 92: FeaturesType structure.

Features Type provides the type definition for the single, optional, Features element in SelectableContent.
 Features defined directly under the Features element in SelectableContent are the top level features. A
 Features element may also include a MultiSelect element that refers to features whose selections are

3277 interdependent.

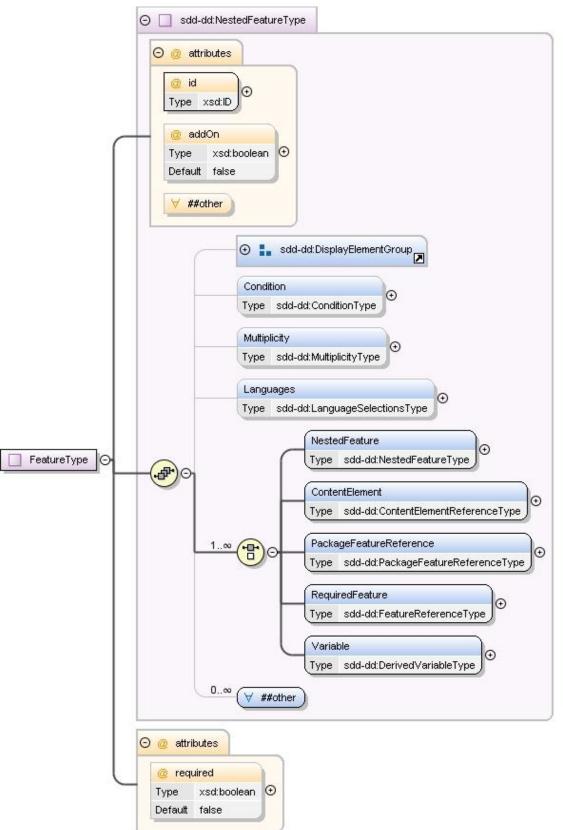
### 3278 4.12.4.1 FeaturesType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
Feature	FeatureType	1*	A top level feature in the hierarchy of features defined in SelectableContent.
MultiSelect	MultiSelectType	0*	A list of feature references whose selection is controlled as a multi-select list with defined minimum and maximum selections.
	xsd:any	0*	

### 3279 4.12.4.2 FeaturesType Property Usage Notes

- Feature: Each top level *Feature* can define *NestedFeatures*. All features can define required
   relationships with other features that cause the required feature to be selected.
- 3282 See the *FeatureType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.5].
- 3283 MultiSelect: The MultiSelect element MUST refer to Feature or NestedFeature elements.
- 3284 See the *MultiSelectType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.15].

# 3285 **4.12.5 FeatureType**



# 3286

#### 3287 Figure 93: FeatureType structure.

3288 *FeatureType* provides the type definition for each feature defined directly below *SelectableContent*. A 3289 *Feature* can define *NestedFeatures* and identify *ContentElements* and other features that will be selected 3290 when the feature is selected. A feature can also be defined to be available for selection only under certain 3291 conditions.

# 3292 4.12.5.1 FeatureType Property Summary

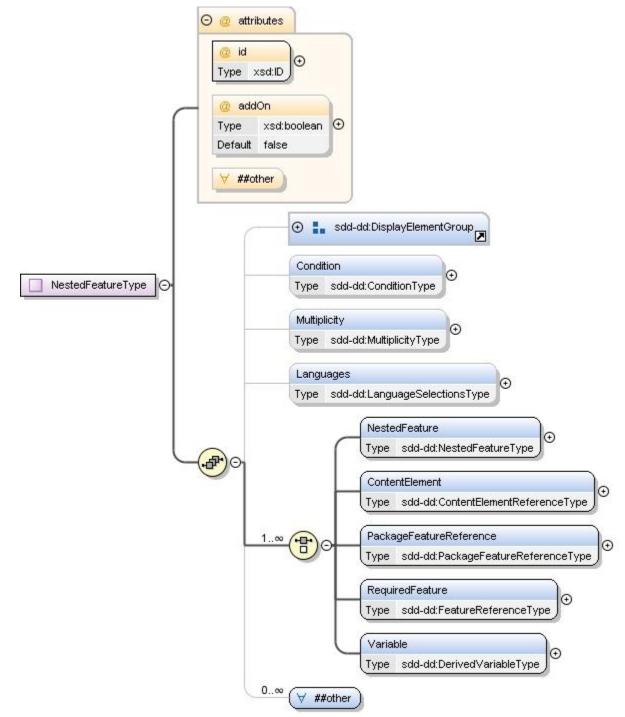
Name	Туре	*	Description	
	[extends] NestedFeatureType		See the NestedFeatureType section for additional properties [4.12.6].	
required	xsd:boolean	01	Indicates the feature must be selected. **default value="false"	

# 3293 4.12.5.2 FeatureType Property Usage Notes

3294 See the *NestedFeatureType* section for details about the inherited attributes and elements [4.12.6].

- required: A top level *Feature* MUST be selected when the value of the *required* attribute is "true". In
   this case, the user cannot choose to deselect this top level *Feature*.
- In *Features* that define *Multiplicity*, the SDD author can state a minimum number of instances of the *Feature*. This minimum applies only if the *Feature* is selected. The *required* attribute can be used to indicate that the *Feature* is always selected and so the minimum number of instances applies.
- 3300 The *required* attribute SHOULD be used only when *Multiplicity* is applied to the *Feature*.

# 3301 4.12.6 NestedFeatureType



#### 3302

#### 3303 Figure 94: NestedFeatureType structure.

NestedFeatureType is identical to FeatureType except that NestedFeatureType does not define a
 required attribute. All features other than those defined directly below SelectableContent use the
 NestedFeatureType.

# 3307 4.12.6.1 NestedFeatureType Property Summary

Name	Туре	* Description	
sdd-v2.0-csd02 Copyright © OASI	S Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.	Standards Track Work Product	16 May 2011 Page 154 of 187

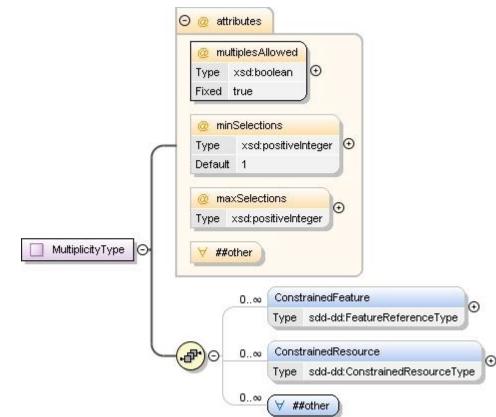
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	01	A human-readable name for the feature.
Description	DisplayTextType	01	A human-readable description of the feature.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	A human-readable short description of the feature.
Condition	ConditionType	01	A condition that determines if the feature is relevant to a particular deployment.
Multiplicity	MultiplicityType	01	Both an indication that multiple instances of the feature can be selected and the specification of their constraints.
Languages	LanguageSelectionsType	01	A list of language support available for the feature's content.
NestedFeature	NestedFeatureType	0*	A nested feature.
ContentElement	ContentElementReferenceType	0*	A reference to a content element to be deployed when the feature is selected.
PackageFeatureReference	PackageFeatureReferenceType	0*	A reference to a feature to be selected in a ContainedPackage defined in either the BaseContent or SelectableContent hierarchies.
RequiredFeature	FeatureReferenceType	0*	A reference to a feature that is required when the defining feature is selected and so is selected automatically.
Variable	DerivedVariableType	0*	The definition of a variable that can be used anywhere in any variable expression in the SDD.
	xsd:any	0*	
id	xsd:ID	1	Used within the SDD to refer to the feature.
addOn	xsd:boolean	01	A "true" value indicates that the feature can be added to a deployed instance of the solution.
			**default value="false"
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

# 3308 4.12.6.2 NestedFeatureType Property Usage Notes

- **DisplayName**: This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it
   MUST provide a label for the nested feature.
- 3311 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- **Description, ShortDescription**: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the nested feature.
- 3314 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 3315 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- Condition: If the features and its nested features are only applicable in certain environments, a
   *Condition* can be defined. When the *Condition* is not met, the feature and its nested features are not in scope.
- 3319For example, some features may be available only on a Linux operating system, even though the<br/>software can be applied on other operating systems. In this case, a *Condition* can be defined to<br/>cause the feature to be ignored when the operating system is not Linux.

- 3322 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
- Multiplicity: When multiple instances of a feature can be selected, a *Multiplicity* element MUST be defined.
- 3325For example, a solution that includes a server and a client may allow the deployment of multiple3326clients. In this situation, a feature that defines a *Multiplicity* element would select the content3327elements that deploy the client software.
- 3328 See the *MultiplicityType* section for structure and usage details [4.12.7].
- Languages: Sometimes language support for a feature is different than that available for the overall solution. This is especially likely when features are implemented by aggregation of packages provided by different teams. When language support differs, the *Languages* element of the feature MUST be defined to state which languages are supported for the feature.
- 3333 When *Languages* is defined in a feature, it overrides the global declaration of supported languages 3334 and MUST declare the complete set of language support available for that feature.
- 3335 If *Languages* is not defined, the global declaration of supported languages in *CompositeInstallable* 3336 applies for the feature.
- 3337 See the *LanguageSelectionsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.4].
- NestedFeature: A NestedFeature must be explicitly selected. It is not assumed to be selected when
   the parent feature is selected. Selection of a nested feature causes its parent feature to be selected,
   but not vice-versa. The definition of a NestedFeature indicates that application of the NestedFeature
   is dependent on application of the parent feature.
- ContentElement: The ContentElement referred to MUST be in the selectable content hierarchy defined by the SelectableContent element.
- When the content reference is to a *CompositeUnit*, the composite and all content elements below it in the content hierarchy are considered to be in scope when the feature is selected. Ease of referencing a group of content from a feature can be one reason for using a composite in the content hierarchy.
- 3347 See the ContentElementReferenceType section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.9].
- PackageFeatureReference: Selection of a feature may result in selection of an aggregated
   package's feature identified by a *ContainedPackage* element anywhere in the *BaseContent* or
   SelectableContent hierarchies. A *PackageFeatureReference* identifies both the *ContainedPackage* and the applicable features to be selected in that package.
- 3352 See the *PackageFeatureReferenceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.10].
- RequiredFeature: When the selection of one feature requires the selection of another feature, the
   *RequiredFeature* can be used to specify this requirement.
- 3355 When two features identify each other as required features, they are always selected together.
- 3356 The selection of the defining feature MUST cause the required feature to be selected.
- 3357 See the *FeatureReferenceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.8].
- Variable: Variables defined in features are useful when inputs to an artifact need to vary based on which features are selected for a particular deployment. Artifact arguments can be defined in terms of feature Variables to allow for this variation. When an artifact deploys selectable content, inputs to the artifact that indicate the selections for a particular deployment can be associated with feature selection in the SDD via feature Variables.
- For example, a *Feature* that deploys a trace facility might define a *Variable* called
  "TraceSettings". The value of an argument to a base content artifact might define its value as
  "\$(TraceSettings)". If the feature is selected, this argument would be used and its value would be
  taken from the feature *Variable*. If the feature is not selected, the argument would be ignored.
- A Variable defined in a feature differs from Variable elements defined in content elements in one
   important way. A reference to an undefined feature Variable is treated as an empty string and is
   considered to be defined.
- 3370 See the *DerivedVariableType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.19].

- **id**: Provides the means to reference a feature from other features.
- 3372The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating3373log and trace messages.
- addOn: When a solution and the artifacts that deploy the various parts of the solution are designed in a way that supports the addition of a particular feature at a later time (after the deployment of the base solution), the *addOn* attribute is set to "true".



# 3377 4.12.7 MultiplicityType

#### 3378

#### 3379 Figure 95: MultiplicityType structure.

3380 Some solutions allow multiple instances of some portion of the solution's resources to be deployed as 3381 part of the solution.

For example, a solution that includes a server and a client may allow the deployment of multiple clients. The deployment of each client may involve content elements that represent several different resulting resources, features that control optional functionality of the client and configuration elements that configure the client. All of these can be defined within a "Client" feature that declares a *Multiplicity* element that indicates that multiple clients are allowed. Each selection or "instance" of the feature results in the deployment of a client.

The phrase "feature instance" is used to refer to the set of instances of all resources deployed when the feature is selected. It does not imply that features themselves are represented as having lifecycle or that features in the SDD correspond with feature instances in the deployment environment.

# 3391 4.12.7.1 MultiplicityType Property Summary

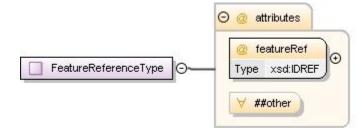
Name	Туре	*	Description
ConstrainedFeature	FeatureReferenceType	0*	A nested feature whose selection must be the same for all instances of the defining feature in a particular deployment.

ConstrainedResource	ConstrainedResourceType	0*	A resource that must resolve to the same resource instance for all instances of the feature in a particular deployment.
	xsd:any	0*	
multiplesAllowed	xsd:boolean	1	Indicates that multiple instances of the feature are allowed. **fixed value="true"
minSelections	xsd:positiveInteger	01	The minimum number of instances of the feature that must be selected if the feature is selected at all. **default value="1"
maxSelections	xsd:positiveInteger	01	That maximum number of instances of the feature that can be selected.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

# 3392 4.12.7.2 MultiplicityType Property Usage Notes

- ConstrainedFeature: A feature with multiplicity may contain NestedFeature elements. When a
   NestedFeature is identified in a ConstrainedFeature, then all instances of the defining Feature MUST
   make the same selection choice for that NestedFeature.
- 3396 See the *FeatureReferenceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.8].
- ConstrainedResource: The content elements selected by a feature may express constraints on resources. When the resource constraints for each instance of a feature must resolve to the same resource instance, or when all must resolve to unique resource instances, the resource is referred to and the constraint type is identified in the *ConstrainedResource* element.
- 3401 See the *ConstrainedResourceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.11].
- multiplesAllowed: This is an attribute with a fixed value of "true". It is included because all other
   elements and attributes of *MultiplicityType* are optional. A feature that allows multiples but has no
   need to define constraints on resources, features or number of instances would define a *Multiplicity* element that had only the *multiplesAllowed* attribute.
- **minSelections**: When a feature is selected, if more than one instance of the feature is required,
   *minSelections* MUST be specified.
- maxSelections: When a feature is selected, if there is a limit on the number of instances of the
   feature that can be selected, *maxSelections* MUST be specified. If *maxSelections* is defined, it MUST
   be equal to or greater than *minSelections*.

# 3411 **4.12.8 FeatureReferenceType**



### 3412

#### 3413 Figure 96: FeatureReferenceType structure.

3414 *FeatureReferenceType* provides a way to reference a feature defined in the SDD from within the SDD.

### 3415 4.12.8.1 FeatureReferenceType Property Summary

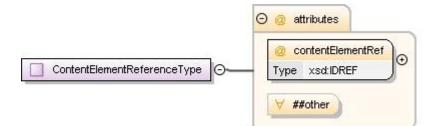
#### Name Type \* Description

featureRef	xsd:IDREF	1	Reference to a feature defined in the deployment descriptor.	
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*		

### 3416 **4.12.8.2 FeatureReferenceType Property Usage Notes**

**GatureRef**: The value MUST reference the *id* of a feature in the deployment descriptor.

# 3418 4.12.9 ContentElementReferenceType



3419

#### 3420 Figure 97: ContentElementReferenceType structure.

3421 *ContentElementReferenceType* provides a way to reference a content element defined in the SDD from 3422 within a feature.

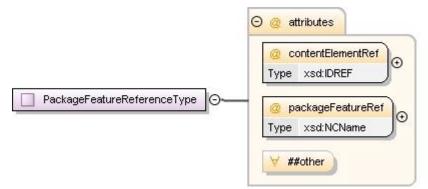
### 3423 4.12.9.1 ContentElementReferenceType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
contentElementRef	xsd:IDREF	1	Reference to a content element in the deployment descriptor's selectable content.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

# 3424 **4.12.9.2 ContentElementReferenceType Property Usage Notes**

3425 contentElementRef: The value MUST reference the *id* of a content element in the deployment descriptor.

# 3427 4.12.10 PackageFeatureReferenceType



3428

#### 3429 Figure 98: PackageFeatureReferenceType structure.

- 3430 *PackageFeatureReferenceType* provides a way to reference a feature defined in a referenced SDD. It
- identifies the *ContainedPackage* element that references the SDD and the feature in the referenced SDD.

### 3432 **4.12.10.1 PackageFeatureReferenceType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
contentElementRef	xsd:IDREF	1	Reference to a content element in the deployment descriptor.
packageFeatureRef	xsd:NCName	1	The feature's id as defined in the referenced package's deployment descriptor.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

### 3433 **4.12.10.2 PackageFeatureReferenceType Property Usage Notes**

- 3434 contentElementRef: This value MUST reference the *id* of a *ContainedPackage* element in
   3435 *SelectableContent* or *BaseContent*. This reference does not cause the *ContainedPackage* to be in
   3436 scope.
- **packageFeatureRef**: Specifies the value of the *id* of a feature element from the SDD of the
- 3438 ContainedPackage identified in contentElementRef. This feature reference is ignored when the
- 3439 *ContainedPackage* identified in *contentElementRef* is not in scope for a particular deployment.

# 3440 **4.12.11 ConstrainedResourceType**

⊖ @ attributes	
<pre>@ resourceRef Type xsd:IDREF </pre> @ constraintType	
Type sdd-dd:MultiplicityConstraintType	• •
Default same	
∀ ##other	

3441

#### 3442 Figure 99: ConstrainedResourceType structure.

A resource may be required during deployment of the content selected by a *Feature* instance. The requirement may exist because the resource is used in a *Requirement* statement, referred to in a *Variable* whose value is in scope for the particular deployment or referred to in a constraint in a *Condition* that is satisfied for the particular deployment. This is an in-scope, required resource for the particular deployment. The SDD author may wish to constrain in-scope, required resources to resolve to the same resource instance for all *Feature* instances or to resolve to unique resource instances for each *Feature* instance. This is done using a *ConstrainedResource* element.

### 3450 4.12.11.1 ConstrainedResourceType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
resourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	A reference to the constrained resource.
constraintType	MultiplicityConstraintType	01	Indicates whether the constraint requires every instance of the resource to be the same or requires every instance to be different. **default value="same"
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

### 3451 **4.12.11.2 ConstrainedResourceType Property Usage Notes**

- **resourceRef**: The value MUST reference the *id* of a resource element in *Topology*.
- 3453 constraintType: If there is a constraint, *constraintType* indicates that all resource instances be unique or that all resource instances be the same.
- 3455For example, all clients for a particular solution may need to connect to the same database. In3456this case, constraintType would be set to same. In other cases, each of the deployed resources3457might need to use its own unique instance of a required resource. If there could be only one client3458per operating system, a constraint on the operating system resource would set constraintType to3459unique.
- 3460 See the *MultiplicityConstraintType* section for the enumeration values for *constraintType* [4.12.12].

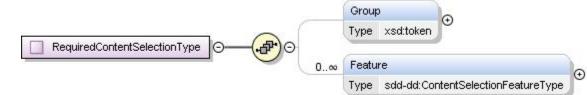
# 3461 4.12.12 MultiplicityConstraintType

This is a simple type that is used to indicate how resources declared in the *Multiplicity* element should be treated. Enumeration values are *same*, *unique*, or if a value is not specified, the SDD author is indicating that it doesn't matter.

### 3465 **4.12.12.1 MultiplicityConstraintType Property Usage Notes**

- same: The value same is used to indicate that the constraint requires all resource instances MUST
   be the same.
- **unique**: The value *unique* is used to indicate that each resource instance MUST be unique.

### 3469 4.12.13 RequiredContentSelectionType



3470

#### 3471 Figure 100: RequiredContentSelectionType structure.

When one SDD aggregates another, there needs to be an indication of which *Groups* and/or *Features* in the aggregated SDD should be selected. The *RequiredContentSelection* of the referenced package element identifies which elements MUST be selected when the defining package is selected.

### 3475 **4.12.13.1 RequiredContentSelectionType Property Summary**

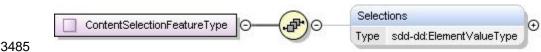
Name	Туре	*	Description
Group	xsd:token	01	A reference to the group to be selected.
Feature	ContentSelectionFeatureType	0*	A reference to a feature to be selected.

### 3476 4.12.13.2 RequiredContentSelectionType Property Usage Notes

Group: The *Group* value is the identifier of a *Group* in the aggregated SDD. This value MUST
 reference the *id* of a *Group* element in the deployment descriptor denoted by the referenced package.

- Feature: The *Feature* element value is the identifier of the feature in the aggregated SDD. Attributes
   indicating the number of selections to be made can be included. The feature value MUST be the *id* of
   a feature element in the deployment descriptor denoted by the referenced package.
- 3482 If *Group* is also defined, *Feature* SHOULD be a feature that is not selected by the *Group*.
- 3483 See the *ContentSelectionFeatureType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.14].

# 3484 4.12.14 ContentSelectionFeatureType



#### 3486 **Figure 101: ContentSelectionFeatureType structure.**

3487 The *ContentSelectionFeatureType* allows for the definition of the number of times a feature can be 3488 referenced if that feature includes a *Multiplicity* element.

For example, a software package has a server and client; the server can be deployed only on one machine, but the client can be deployed on multiple machines and configured to reference the one server. The server, for performance reasons, is limited to 10 client connections. To limit the number of times the client can be deployed, the *Selections* element expression should be set to "10".

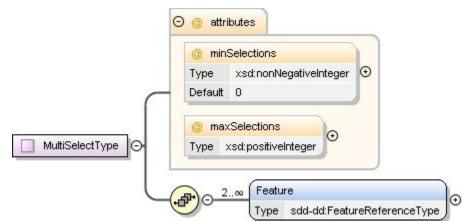
#### 3493 **4.12.14.1 ContentSelectionFeatureType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description	
	[extends] xsd:token		See the xsd:token definition in <b>[XSD]</b> .	
Selections	ElementValueType	01	The number of times a feature with Multiplicity in the referenced package should be deployed.	

### 3494 **4.12.14.2 ContentSelectionFeatureType Property Usage Notes**

- 3495 See the xsd:token definition in **[XSD]** for inherited attributes and elements.
- Selections: The value of Selections MUST be, or resolve to, a positive integer that is within the
   bounds of the *minSelections* and *maxSelections* attributes defined in the *Multiplicity* element of the
   referenced feature.
- 3499 A *pattern* of wildcard is not supported and MUST NOT be used with the *Selections* element.
- 3500 See the *ElementValueType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.2].

# 3501 4.12.15 MultiSelectType



3502

#### 3503 Figure 102: MultiSelectType structure.

3504 *MultiSelectType* defines a way to associate features with a defined minimum and maximum number of 3505 selections allowed. A *MultiSelect* element MAY be used to support identification of mutually exclusive 3506 features.

### 3507 **4.12.15.1 MultiSelectType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
Feature	FeatureReferenceType	2*	A reference to a feature in the list of features defined in the MultiSelect element.
minSelections	xsd:nonNegativeInteger	01	Minimum number of features that must be selected. **default value="0"
maxSelections	xsd:positiveInteger	01	Maximum number of features that can be selected.

# 3508 4.12.15.2 MultiSelectType Property Usage Notes

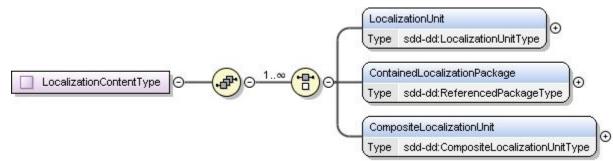
- **Feature**: The value MUST reference the *id* of a feature element.
- 3510 See the *FeatureReferenceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.12.8].
- minSelections, maxSelections: When it is not necessary that any of the features in the *MultiSelect* list be selected, the default of "0" can be used.
- 3513 Mutually exclusive features can be defined using a *MultiSelect* element with two features, 3514 *minSelections* set to "0" and *maxSelections* set to "1".
- 3515If multiple instances of a single feature are selected via multiplicity, the set of multiple instances count3516only once toward the minimum and maximum. In other words, the count is based solely on the3517features selected, not on how many instances of each feature are selected.
- 3518 When *maxSelections* is not defined, all of the features in the *MultiSelect* MAY be selected for a particular deployment.
- 3520 If defined, the *maxSelections* value MUST be greater than or equal to the *minSelections* value and 3521 MUST be less than or equal to the number of referenced features.

# 3522 4.13 Localization

Localization refers to enabling a particular piece of software to support one or more languages. Anything that needs to be deployed to provide support for a particular language in that software is considered localization content. Translated materials are a primary, but not the only, example of localization content.

- Localization content is similar in many ways to other content, but there are important differences in how localization content is selected for deployment that lead to the need for a separate content hierarchy and separate types. Two criteria determine whether or not localization content is in scope for a particular deployment:
- The first criterion has to do with the language or languages supported by the localization content. At
   least one of the languages must be in scope for the content to be selected.
- The second criterion has to do with the availability of the resources to be localized-the localization
   base. The localization base may be a resource deployed by base or selectable content, or it may be a
   resource previously deployed and found in the deployment environment.
- The types described in this section support definition of metadata describing the criteria for determining when localization content is in scope.

# 3537 4.13.1 LocalizationContentType



3538

#### 3539 Figure 103: LocalizationContentType structure.

The *LocalizationContent* tree contains all content created specifically to provide localization by deploying language-specific materials for a particular location. The localization support provided can be for content defined in the SDD or it can be for resources in the deployment environment that are not created or modified by deployment of the SDD. Each element defined in the *LocalizationContent* hierarchy is in scope for a particular deployment when it supports a language that is in scope for that deployment and when its localization base, if any, is available.

# 3546 4.13.1.1 LocalizationContentType Property Summary

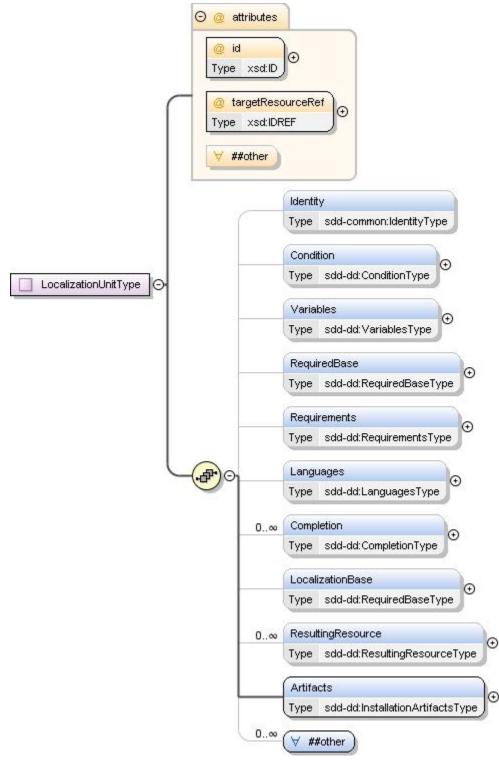
Name	Туре	*	Description
LocalizationUnit	LocalizationUnitType	0*	Contains artifacts that create, modify or delete language support.
ContainedLocalizationPackage	ReferencedPackageType	0*	Identifies an SDD whose contents are aggregated to create, modify or delete language support.
CompositeLocalizationUnit	CompositeLocalizationUnitType	0*	An organizational element that groups localization content and defines metadata common to all the grouped content.

# 3547 4.13.1.2 LocalizationContentType Property Usage Notes

- LocalizationUnit: When there is no need to group a *LocalizationUnit* with other units that have common metadata, the *LocalizationUnit* is defined at the top level of the hierarchy. A *LocalizationUnit* defined at the top level of the *LocalizationContent* hierarchy is in scope for a particular deployment when its *Condition* and *LocalizationBase*, if any, evaluate to true and its *Languages* element, if any, defines a language that is in scope for the deployment.
- 3553 See the *LocalizationUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.2].
- ContainedLocalizationPackage: ContainedLocalizationPackage definitions include a list of
   languages supported by the contained package. The package need not be processed if none of those
   languages is in scope for a particular deployment.
- 3557 See the *ReferencedPackageType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.10.1].
- **CompositeLocalizationUnit**: *CompositeLocalizationUnit* is a construct that allows organization of localization content in a way that is meaningful to the SDD author.
- 3560One example use of a CompositeLocalizationUnit is to group a set of LocalizationUnits that3561provide support for a variety of languages for the same resource. This eliminates the need to3562define identical LocalizationBase elements in every LocalizationUnit. It can be defined once in the3563CompositeLocalizationUnit.
- If evaluation of the *CompositeLocalizationUnit's Condition*, *Languages* and *LocalizationBase* determines that it is not selected for deployment, none of the content elements defined below it in the
   hierarchy are selected.

- 3567 *Requirements, Variables, Conditions* and *Completion* elements common to all child content elements 3568 MAY be defined once in the *CompositeLocalizationUnit* rather than once in each nested element.
- 3569 See the *CompositeLocalizationUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.3].

# 3570 4.13.2 LocalizationUnitType



# 3571

#### 3572 **Figure 104: LocalizationUnitType structure.**

3573 The *LocalizationUnit* element defines artifacts that deploy localization content for one group of resources

3574 whose translations are packaged together. Localization content consists of materials that have been

3575 translated into one or more languages.

# 3576 4.13.2.1 LocalizationUnitType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
Identity	IdentityType	01	Human-understandable identity information about the LocalizationUnit.
Condition	ConditionType	01	A condition that determines if the content element is relevant to a particular deployment.
Variables	VariablesType	01	Variables that can be referenced in the LocalizationUnit's requirement and artifact definitions.
RequiredBase	RequiredBaseType	01	A resource that will be updated when the LocalizationUnit's UpdateArtifact is processed.
Requirements	ts RequirementsType 01 Requirements that must be met prior to s LocalizationUnit's artifacts.		Requirements that must be met prior to successful processing of the LocalizationUnit's artifacts.
Languages	LanguagesType	01	The LocalizationUnit's artifacts contain materials translated into these languages.
Completion	CompletionType	0*	Describes completion actions such as restart and the conditions under which the action is applied.
LocalizationBase RequiredBaseType		01	A resource whose translatable characteristics will be localized by processing the LocalizationUnit's InstallArtifact.
ResultingResource	ResultingResourceType	0*	A resource that will be installed or updated by processing the LocalizationUnit's artifacts.
Artifacts	InstallationArtifactsType	1	The set of artifacts associated with the LocalizationUnit.
	xsd:any	0*	
id xsd:ID 1 An identifier for the Localization descriptor.		An identifier for the LocalizationUnit scoped to the deployment descriptor.	
targetResourceRef	xsd:IDREF	1	Reference to the resource that can process the LocalizationUnit's artifacts.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

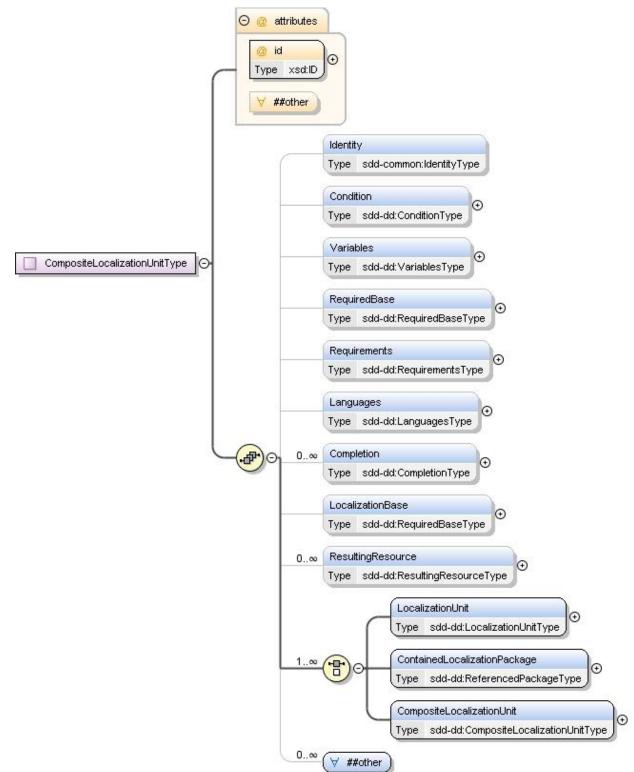
# 3577 4.13.2.2 LocalizationUnitType Property Usage Notes

- Identity: The *Identity* element defines human-understandable information that reflects the identity of the provided localization resources as understood by the end user of the solution. *Identity* has elements that are common with elements in the corresponding *PackageDescriptor's PackageIdentity* element, for example, *Name* and *Version*. The values of these common elements SHOULD be the same as the corresponding *PackageIdentity* element values.
- 3583 See the *IdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.4].
- Condition: A *Condition* is used when the *LocalizationUnit's* content should be deployed only when
   certain conditions exist in the deployment environment.
- 3586For example, for a package that has one artifact that should be processed when the operating3587system is Linux and another artifact that should be processed when the operating system is

- 3588Windows, the LocalizationUnit defining metadata for the Linux artifact would have a condition on<br/>the operating system being Linux. The LocalizationUnit defining metadata for the Windows<br/>artifact would have a condition on the operating system being Windows.
- 3591 Conditions should not be used to identify the resource that will be localized by the LocalizationUnit.
   3592 The LocalizationBase element is used for that purpose. A LocalizationUnit can have both a Condition
   3593 and a LocalizationBase.
- 3594 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
- Variables: A Variables element defines variables that can be used in the definition of requirements
   and artifact parameters.
- 3597 When the deployment descriptor defines a single *LocalizationUnit* at the top level, that is, not inside a 3598 *CompositeInstallable*, the variables it defines can also be referred to in any element under *Topology*.
- 3599 See the *VariablesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.5].
- RequiredBase: RequiredBase identifies the resource that must exist prior to applying the
   LocalizationUnit's update artifact.
- 3602 See the *RequiredBaseType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.8].
- **Requirements**: *Requirements* MUST be met prior to processing the *LocalizationUnit's* artifacts.
- 3604 See the *RequirementsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.1].
- Languages: Languages lists the languages of the translated material deployed by the LocalizationUnit.
- 3607 See the *LanguagesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.6].
- Completion: A Completion element MUST be included if the artifact being processed requires a
   system operation such as a reboot or logoff to occur to function successfully after deployment or if the artifact executes a system operation to complete deployment of the contents of the artifact.
- 3611 There MUST be an artifact associated with the operation defined by a *Completion* element.
- 3612 For example, if there is a *Completion* element for the *install* operation, the *LocalizationUnit* must define an *InstallArtifact*.
- 3614 See the *CompletionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.14].
- LocalizationBase: LocalizationBase identifies the resource or resources that can be localized by
   processing the LocalizationUnit. A resource that satisfies the constraints defined in the
   LocalizationBase is one that can be localized by applying the LocalizationUnit.
- If no resource is found that meets the constraints defined in *LocalizationBase* during a particular
   deployment, then the *LocalizationUnit* is not considered to be in scope for that deployment. This does
   not represent an error.
- 3621 Translations created or modified by the *LocalizationUnit* are for human-readable text included with the *LocalizationBase* resources.
- 3623 See the *RequiredBaseType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.8].
- ResultingResource: The ResultingResources for a LocalizationUnit MUST NOT identify resources
   other than localization resources.
- 3626 See the *ResultingResourceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.1].
- Artifacts: When the *LocalizationUnit* is a singleton defined outside of a *CompositeInstallable*, it
   MUST define at least one artifact element and MAY define one of each type of artifact element
   allowed for its type. The inclusion of an artifact element in a singleton *LocalizationUnit* implies support
   for the associated operation.
- When the *LocalizationUnit* is defined within a *CompositeInstallable*, it MUST define exactly one artifact. The artifact defined MAY be any artifact allowed in a *LocalizationUnit* and it MUST support the single top level *operation* defined by the *CompositeInstallable*. This does not mean the operation associated with the artifact has to be the same as the one defined by the *CompositeInstallable*.

- 3635For example, an install of a localization resource may be required during the update of the overall3636solution, in which case the LocalizationUnit would define an InstallArtifact to support the top level3637update operation.
- 3638 See the InstallationArtifactsType section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.4].
- id: The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating
   log and trace messages.
- targetResourceRef: The targetResourceRef attribute MUST reference the *id* of a resource element
   in *Topology* that will process the *LocalizationUnit's* artifacts to create or modify the localization
   resources identified in the *LocalizationUnit's* ResultingResource elements.

# 3644 4.13.3 CompositeLocalizationUnitType



3645

#### 3646 Figure 105: CompositeLocalizationUnitType structure

3647 *CompositeLocalizationUnitType* provides the type definition for all *CompositeLocalizationUnit* elements in 3648 the *LocalizationContent* hierarchy. *CompositeLocalizationUnit* elements define nested localization content 3649 elements and metadata that applies to all of the nested elements.

# 3650 4.13.3.1 CompositeLocalizationUnitType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
Identity	IdentityType	01	Human-understandable identity information about the CompositeLocalizationUnit.
Condition	ndition ConditionType		A condition that determines if the CompositeLocalizationUnit is relevant to a particular deployment.
Variables	VariablesType	01	Variables for use within the CompositeLocalizationUnit and content elements nested beneath it in the hierarchy.
RequiredBase	RequiredBaseType	01	A resource that will be updated when the nested elements are processed.
Requirements	RequirementsType	01	Requirements that must be met prior to successful processing of the nested content elements.
Languages	LanguagesType	01	Localization elements defined within CompositeLocalizationUnit contain materials translated into these languages.
Completion	CompletionType	0*	Describes completion actions such as restart and the conditions under which the action is applied.
LocalizationBase	RequiredBaseType	01	A resource whose translatable characteristics will be localized by processing the nested content elements.
ResultingResource	ResultingResourceType	0*	A localization resource that will be installed or updated by processing the nested content elements.
LocalizationUnit	LocalizationUnitType	0*	Contains artifacts that will create, modify or delete language support.
ContainedLocalizationPackage	ReferencedPackageType	0*	Identifies an SDD whose contents are aggregated to create, modify or delete language support.
CompositeLocalizationUnit	CompositeLocalizationUnitType	0*	An organizational element that groups localization content and defines metadata common to all the grouped content.
	xsd:any	0*	
id	xsd:ID	1	An identifier for the CompositeLocalizationUnit that is unique within the deployment descriptor.
	xsd:anyAttribute	0*	

# 3651 4.13.3.2 CompositeLocalizationUnitType Property Usage Notes

3652

3653

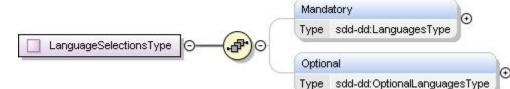
3654

Identity: The CompositeLocalizationUnit, like all content elements, is a unit of packaging. Its identity
is the identity of a unit of packaging and may be useful to package management tools. The identity
MAY be similar or identical to the identity of the ResultingResource(s).

- 3655 See the *IdentityType* section for structure and additional usage details [3.4].
- Condition: If the composite and the elements nested beneath it are applicable only in certain
   environments, a *Condition* can be defined. When the *Condition* is not met, the composite and its
   nested elements are not in scope.
- 3659 See the *ConditionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.5.1].
- Variables: Variables used by more than one nested element can be defined in the
   *CompositeLocalizationUnit* for efficiency both in composing and processing the SDD. Variables are
   visible to all nested content elements.
- 3663 See the *VariablesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.6.5].
- RequiredBase: If the processing of all the update artifacts in the nested content elements results in a single resource being updated, that resource can be defined in the *CompositeLocalizationUnit's RequiredBase* element.
- 3667 See the *RequiredBaseType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.8].
- Requirements: When a *CompositeLocalizationUnit* is in scope for a particular deployment–as
   determined by evaluation of its *LocalizationBase* and *Languages* properties–then its requirements
   MUST be met.
- 3671 See the *RequirementsType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.1].
- 3672 Languages: The Languages element in the CompositeLocalizationUnit MUST NOT be defined or 3673 MUST define the union of all languages supported by the nested content elements. For nested content elements to be evaluated to determine if they are in scope, the CompositeLocalizationUnit 3674 3675 must be in scope. When Languages is present in the CompositeLocalizationUnit, it must define one of 3676 the languages in scope for the particular deployment if any of the nested elements are to be evaluated. If Languages is not present in a CompositeLocalizationUnit, evaluation of all the child 3677 3678 elements still is required, as long as the other elements of CompositeLocalizationUnit have evaluated 3679 to true. When the Languages and/or the LocalizationBase element in a CompositeLocalizationUnit is 3680 not defined, the nested content elements must be evaluated to determine if they are in scope.
- 3681 See the *LanguagesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.6].
- Completion: When a particular completion action applies to all nested elements and should be
   performed only once for the entire group, it can be defined in the *CompositeLocalizationUnit* rather
   than in each individual element.
- 3685 See the *CompletionType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.3.14].
- LocalizationBase: A LocalizationBase element evaluates to true when the resource identified in the base is created by a content element that is in scope for the deployment or it already exists in the deployment environment.
- 3689 When the *LocalizationBase* is defined it must evaluate to true for any of the nested content elements 3690 to be evaluated. If it evaluates to false, none of the nested content elements are in scope. If it 3691 evaluates to true, the nested content elements may be in scope.
- 3692 When the *LocalizationBase* and/or the *Languages* element in a *CompositeLocalizationUnit* is not defined, the nested content elements must be evaluated to determine if they are in scope.
- 3694 See the *RequiredBaseType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.7.8].
- ResultingResource: If there are one or more resources that will be created when the nested content
   elements are processed, they can be defined here.
- 3697 See the *ResultingResourceType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.8.1].
- LocalizationUnit: LocalizationUnits defined within the composite typically have common metadata.
   Metadata defined in the composite does not need to be repeated in the nested element. Definitions in the nested LocalizationUnit are additions to those defined in the composite.
- 3701 See the *LocalizationUnitType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.2].
- ContainedLocalizationPackage: A ContainedLocalizationPackage is defined in a
   CompositeLocalizationUnit for the same reasons that a LocalizationUnit is-because it has metadata
   in common with other elements defined in the composite.

- 3705 See the *ReferencedPackageType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.10.1].
- CompositeLocalizationUnit: A CompositeLocalizationUnit can be nested inside another
   CompositeLocalizationUnit when some of the metadata is shared only by a subset of the elements
   nested in the higher level composite.
- For example, the higher level composite might contain operating system requirements that apply
   to all localization content and nested composites might group localization content by localization
   base.
- **id**: This *id* is not referred to by any other element in the deployment descriptor.
- The *id* attribute may be useful to software that processes the SDD, for example, for use in creating log and trace messages. It also may be useful for associating custom discovery logic with the *CompositeLocalizationUnit's* resource-related elements.

### 3716 4.13.4 LanguageSelectionsType



3717

#### 3718 **Figure 106: LanguageSelectionsType structure.**

*LanguageSelectionsType* provides the type definition for the *Languages* element in *CompositeInstallable* that describes the languages supported by the SDD as a whole. It also provides the type definition for the
 *Languages* element in features that allows a feature to override the SDD-wide definitions.

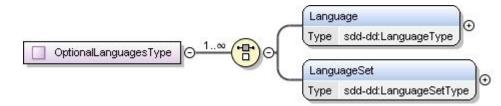
# 3722 **4.13.4.1 LanguageSelectionsType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
Mandatory	LanguagesType	01	The set of languages that will be deployed.
Optional	OptionalLanguagesType	01	The set of language selections available to the deployer.

### 3723 4.13.4.2 LanguageSelectionsType Property Usage Notes

- **Mandatory**: The deployer has no ability to determine if a mandatory language will be deployed.
- 3725 See the *LanguagesType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.6].
- Optional: Each language group in the list of optional languages defines a list of one or more languages that can be selected together.
- Language groups defined in *LanguageSelections* MAY be used to allow the deployer to select individual languages or to allow selection of multiple languages as a single choice.
- 3730 See the OptionalLanguagesType section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.5].

### 3731 4.13.5 OptionalLanguagesType



3732

#### 3733 Figure 107: OptionalLanguagesType structure

OptionalLanguagesType supports definition of a language or sets of languages that the deployer can
 optionally choose for deployment. This type is used to define the global set of optional languages in
 *CompositeInstallable* as well as any *Feature*-specific set that overrides the global set for a particular
 *Feature*.

# 3738 4.13.5.1 OptionalLanguagesType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
Language	LanguageType	1*	A single language that can be chosen individually.
LanguageSet	LanguageSetType	1*	A set of languages that can be chosen together.

# 3739 **4.13.5.2 OptionalLanguagesType Property Usage Notes**

- Language: When the SDD author allows the deployer to individually select a language for deployment, it is defined in a *Language* element within *OptionalLanguages*.
- 3742 See the *LanguageType* section for structure and usage details [4.13.7].
- LanguageSet: When the SDD author allows the deployer to select languages for deployment as a set, it is defined in a *LanguageSet* element within *OptionalLanguages*.
- 3745 One example of a reason to define optional languages in a set rather than individually is for a 3746 group of languages that are packaged together and whose deployment cannot be separated.
- 3747 See the *LanguageSetType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.8].

### 3748 4.13.6 LanguagesType

LanguagesType O 1... Language
Type sdd-dd:LanguageType O

# 3749

#### 3750 Figure 108: LanguagesType structure.

*LanguagesType* supports expression of a list of languages. It is used in the *Languages* elements of
 content elements to list languages supported by that content element. It is also used as the type of the
 *Mandatory* element that lists languages that are deployed by default.

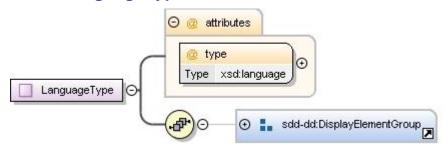
# 3754 **4.13.6.1 LanguagesType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
Language	LanguageType	1*	A single language definition.

### 3755 4.13.6.2 LanguagesType Property Usage Notes

- Language: Each language definition MAY include display information as well as the language code
   that identifies the language.
- 3758 See the *LanguageType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.7].

# 3759 **4.13.7 LanguageType**



3760

#### 3761 **Figure 109: LanguageType structure.**

*LanguageType* supports the definition of display information and the language code for one language. Itis used everywhere a language is defined in the SDD.

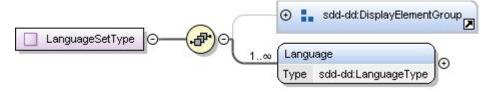
# 3764 4.13.7.1 LanguageType Property Summary

Name	Туре	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	01	A name for the language.
Description	DisplayTextType	01	A description of the language.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	A short description of the language.
type	xsd:language	1	The locale code for the language.

# 3765 4.13.7.2 LanguageType Property Usage Notes

- **DisplayName**: This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it
   MUST provide a label for the language.
- 3768 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- 3769 Description, ShortDescription: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the language.
- 3771 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 3772 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- **type**: The *type* attribute MUST be defined as a value that conforms to the set of language codes defined by [RFC3066].
- 3775 For example, "de" is a locale code for German and "en-US" is the locale code for English in the 3776 United States.

# 3777 4.13.8 LanguageSetType



3778

#### 3779 Figure 110: LanguageSetType structure.

- 3780 *LanguageSetType* provides the type definition for the *OptionalLanguages* elements of
- 3781 CompositeInstallable and Feature. It defines a set of languages that can be selected together.

### 3782 **4.13.8.1 LanguageSetType Property Summary**

Name	Туре	*	Description
DisplayName	DisplayTextType	01	A name for the set of languages.
Description	DisplayTextType	01	A description of the set of languages.
ShortDescription	DisplayTextType	01	A short description of the set of languages.
Language	LanguageType	1*	A set of one or more language codes.

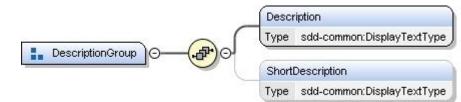
# 3783 4.13.8.2 LanguageSetType Property Usage Notes

- **DisplayName**: This element MAY be used to provide human-understandable information. If used, it
   MUST provide a label for the set of languages.
  - For example, "Eastern European Languages" or "French, English and German".
- 3787 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- **Description, ShortDescription**: These elements MAY be used to provide human-understandable
   information. If used, they MUST provide a description of the set of languages.
- 3790 The Description element MUST be defined if the ShortDescription element is defined.
- 3791 See the *DisplayElementGroup* section for structure and additional usage details [4.14.2].
- **Language**: The languages defined in this element MUST be selected together.
- 3793 See the *LanguageType* section for structure and additional usage details [4.13.7].

# 3794 4.14 Display Information

- 3795 There are many places throughout the SDD where translatable information intended for display to
- humans MAY be defined. All display information definitions can include a *translationKey* that can be usedas an index into a file containing translations.

# 3798 4.14.1 DescriptionGroup



3799

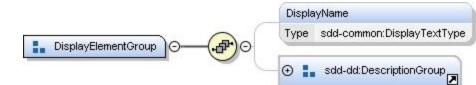
3786

- 3800 **Figure 111: DescriptionGroup structure.**
- The *DescriptionGroup* type is used throughout the SDD to provide human-readable, translatable,
   descriptive-text elements.

# 3803 4.14.1.1 DescriptionGroup Property Usage Notes

- Description: This is a description of the defining element unless usage notes for that element state
   otherwise. It can be as long as necessary to provide a useful description.
- 3806 The *Description* element MUST be defined if the *ShortDescription* element is defined.
- 3807 See the *DisplayTextType* section for details about associating this text with translated text [4.14.3].
- ShortDescription: This is a short description of the defining element unless usage notes for that
   element state that it refers to something else. It SHOULD provide a limited description that can be
   used by tools where limited text is allowed, for example, fly-over help.
- 3811 See the *DisplayTextType* section for details about associating this text with translated text [4.14.3].

# 3812 4.14.2 DisplayElementGroup



3813

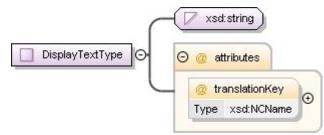
#### 3814 Figure 112: DisplayElementGroup structure.

3815 The *DisplayElementGroup* is used throughout the package descriptor and deployment descriptor to 3816 provide human-readable, translatable names, descriptions and/or short descriptions for a variety of 3817 elements.

#### 3818 4.14.2.1 DisplayElementGroup Property Usage Notes

- 3819 DisplayName: This is a label for the defining element unless usage notes for that element state otherwise.
- 3821 See the *DisplayTextType* section for details about associating this text with translated text [4.14.3].

# 3822 4.14.3 DisplayTextType



3823

#### 3824 Figure 113: DisplayTextType Structure.

3825 Elements of *DisplayTextType* define translatable strings and an optional key to translated text in language
 3826 bundle files. *DisplayTextType* extends the xsd:string type with an optional *translationKey* attribute.

### 3827 4.14.3.1 DisplayTextType Property Usage Notes

- translationKey: The *translationKey* attribute is a value that can be used as an index into a file
   containing translations of *DisplayTextType* elements in the *DeploymentDescriptor* and/or
   *PackageDescriptor*. The value of the *translationKey* MUST match an entry in the message bundle
   referenced by the *descriptorLanguageBundle* attribute in the package descriptor.
- 3832 See the *PackageDescriptor* section for details on how to specify the appropriate message bundle in 3833 the *descriptorLanguageBundle* attribute [3.1].

3834

# 3835 **5 Conformance**

# 3836 5.1 General Conformance Statements

An implementation MAY claim conformance to the entirety of the SDD specification (including all
conformance levels) or one or more particular conformance levels, and/or one or more particular profiles
(SDD conformance levels and profiles are detailed next).

# 3840 **5.2 Conformance Levels**

An SDD conformance level (CL) is defined, consistent with **[CONFORM]**, as a subset of the schema intended to enable a certain set of capabilities to be achieved, based on SDDs that restrict their content to the particular CL. The purpose of conformance levels is to allow subsets of the full set of capabilities that can be expressed using an SDD to be implemented. The proper subsets are expected to be easier to implement, but still offer features, value and interoperability that make it worthwhile to implement a particular CL in certain circumstances.

SDD conformance levels are designated as CL1 and CL2. CL1 is a proper subset of the schema; CL2
 represents the full schema. CL1 is the minimal set or core of the specification that shall be implemented
 by all products. CL2 includes all of CL1 and consists of the entire specification.

3850 The following sections describe the defined CLs for SDD.

# 3851 **5.2.1 CL Capabilities**

3852 Table 1 expresses the capabilities for each defined CL.

	Conformance Level 1	Conformance Level 2
Description	Single target, simple package.	Multi-target, aggregated packages; full deployment capabilities with all functions enabled by the SDD schema.
Objective	Serve as the "on-ramp" for SDD adoption. Deploy pre-prepared content that needs limited customization (basic parameters). Descriptors serve as contract between assembly and operations. Exemplary use case is "wrappering" existing packages in SDD.	Serve as the expected level for newly- authored non-legacy SDDs. Deploy newly- prepared content that has related components in a solution, with various topologies. Most robust specification (and corresponding run-time implementations) of SDD. Exemplary use case is non-trivial, non-legacy solution deployment.
Included Schema Functions	<ul> <li>Solution package with single component (singleton IU, CU, or LU; no composite) and single target topology</li> <li>Solution package dependency checking for given environment</li> <li>base installations and maintenance</li> <li>Simple uninstall (based on information in single descriptor)</li> <li>Ability to deploy existing artifact formats appropriate for the target</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>All functions, including:</li> <li>Aggregation (composites)</li> <li>Features</li> <li>Selectable features</li> <li>Conditional content</li> <li>Variable-target topology</li> <li>Robust localization</li> </ul>

	<ul> <li>environment</li> <li>Some localization possible (localization of the units that are supplied)</li> </ul>	
Excluded Functions	<ul> <li>Features</li> <li>Selectable content</li> <li>Requisites</li> <li>Aggregation</li> <li>Multi-target topology</li> <li>Robust localization</li> <li>Replacements and modifications that change base resource/solution composition (including obsolescence)</li> <li>Backwards compatibility, range enforcement</li> <li>Verification of installation and configuration</li> </ul>	None

3853 **Table 1: SDD conformance level capabilities summary.** 

# 3854 **5.2.2 Conformance Level Differences**

3855 CL1 SDDs can be used to describe the inputs, requirements and results of processing a single
 3856 deployment artifact. This artifact could be one that deploys, updates, configures or localizes software
 3857 resources. This is useful for simple deployments that require only a single artifact. CL2 SDDs add support
 3858 for aggregation of multiple artifacts and SDDs into solutions; definition of features that optionally select
 3859 content; and requisite software that can be deployed if needed to satisfy requirements. CL1 SDDs can be
 3860 aggregated by CL2 SDDs.

3861For example, CL2 SDDs can describe a solution that consists of a Web server, an application server,3862a database and one or more applications, in which each of these components is described by its own3863individual SDD and an aggregating CL2 SDD aggregates them into the composite solution.

The differences between CL1 and CL2 that are summarized in Table 1 are detailed next. These make use of the information that is in the SDD schema; see **[CL1\_Schema]** for the CL1 schema files, and **[CL2\_Schema]** for the CL2 schema files. The differences between the CL1 and CL2 schema files are isolated to the "sdd-dd" namespace. The "sdd-common" and "sdd-pd" namespaces contain identical schema files for each namespace with respect to CL1 and CL2.

# 3869 **5.2.2.1 Type Definitions Modified in CL2**

A few SDD types used in CL1 have additional elements added in CL2. The types listed in the left column
 of Table 2 exist in both CL1 and CL2 with different definitions. The elements in the right column are the
 sub-elements added to the type definitions in CL2.

3873

Type Name	CL2 Sub-Element Names
DeploymentDescriptorType	Requisites
	CompositeInstallable
InstallationArtifactsType	RepairArtifact
ResultingResourceType	Relationship
ResultingChangeType	Relationship
ResourceConstraintGroup	UniquenessConstraint

Type Name	CL2 Sub-Element Names
	RelationshipConstraint
ConditionalResourceConstraintType	UniquenessConstraint RelationshipConstraint
RequirementType	Dependency
AlternativeRequirementType	Dependency

#### 3874 Table 2. Modified Types.

# 3875 5.2.2.2 Type Structures Modified in CL2

- Several SDD types have altered structure between CL1 and CL2. The types listed in the left column of
   Table 3 are valid for both CL1 and CL2; however, valid structure for these types differs between CL1 and
- 3878 CL2, as shown in the center and right columns.
- 3879

Туре	CL1 Structure	CL2 Structure
DeploymentDescriptorType	Choice of one of the following: InstallableUnit, ConfigurationUnit, or LocalizationUnit	Choice of one of the following: InstallableUnit, ConfigurationUnit, or LocalizationUnit,
		or one or more CompositeInstallable elements
RequirementType	Sequence of <i>ResourceConstraint</i> elements	Unbounded choice of <i>ResourceConstraint</i> elements and <i>Dependency</i> elements
AlternativeRequirementType	Sequence of <i>ResourceConstraint</i> elements	Unbounded choice of <i>ResourceConstraint</i> elements and <i>Dependency</i> elements

#### 3880 Table 3. Altered types in CL2.

# 3881 5.2.2.3 SDD Types Introduced in CL2

As seen in Table 2, CL2 adds two new elements to *DeploymentDescriptor*. The *CompositeInstallable* element provides the definition of an aggregate deployment. *CompositeInstallable* is a complex element with many sub-elements. The second element added to *DeploymentDescriptor* is *Requisites*. *Requisites* is a list of references to SDDs that can be used, if needed, to satisfy deployment requirements defined in the *CompositeInstallable*.

Table 4 includes the CL2 types that are introduced in support *CompositeInstallable* and *Requisites* 3888

BaseContentType	FeatureType	PackageFeatureReferenceType
CompositeInstallableType	GroupsType	ReferencedPackageType
CompositeLocalizationType	GroupType	RelationshipConstraintType
CompositeUnitType	InternalDependencyType	RelationshipType
ConstrainedResourceType	LanguageSelectionType	RequiredContentSelectionType
ContentElementReferenceType	LocalizationContentType	RequisitesType
ContentListGroup	MultiplicityConstraintType	ResourceMapType

ContentSelectionFeatureType	MultiplicityType	ResultingChangeMapType
DependencyType	MultiSelectType	ResultingResourceMapType
FeatureReferenceType	NestedFeatureType	SelectableContentType
FeaturesType	OptionalLanguagesType	UniquenessConstraintType

3889 **Table 4 SDD types introduced in CL2.** 

#### 3890 **5.2.2.4 Extended Enumeration Value in CL2**

One SDD type has an additional enumeration value that is valid only for CL2-based implementations. The
 type listed in the left column of Table 5 is valid for both CL1 and CL2; however, the value in the right
 column is valid only for CL2.

3894

Туре	CL2 Enumeration Value
OperationType	repair

3895 **Table 5 Extended enumeration value in CL2.** 

# 3896 **5.3 Profiles**

- Profiles are intended to specify detailed information that can be used in an SDD to promote interoperability. An SDD profile is defined consistent with **[CONFORM]**, to identify the functionality, parameters, options and/or implementation requirements necessary to satisfy the requirements of a particular community of users. SDD profiles are intended to enable a specific set of use cases, typically in a particular domain. Profiles are considered largely orthogonal to CLs; whereas a CL is a subset of the schema, a profile specifies the usage of the schema, including appropriate conventions and content values, to accomplish a particular set of use cases (typically in a particular domain).
- A *starter profile* is initially defined with version 1.0 of this specification and is published separately. This starter profile defines terms and patterns that can be used to generate other specific profiles and addresses the content values that are required to support the SDD XML examples that also are published separately.
- 3908 The starter profile is not intended to be a complete vocabulary for all SDDs, but rather to illustrate the
- format and provide example content so that additional profiles can be generated in the future. The starter profile leverages and extends the CIM standard **[CIM]** for many content values, but other profiles MAY
- 3911 use other content values.
- 3912 Other profiles MAY be published by the TC in the future, and new profiles can be created as specified in 5.3.1.
- 3914 An implementation MAY claim conformance to one or more particular profiles.

# 3915 5.3.1 Profile Creation

- The SDD TC has created a starter profile as described in 5.3. The SDD TC MAY create additional profiles in the future.
- 3918 Others MAY create SDD profiles for use cases, domains, or user communities that are not addressed by 3919 the currently available profiles from the SDD TC. When creating new profiles, it is RECOMMENDED that 3920 profile creators follow the model of the starter profile and any existing profiles and reuse content from 3921 existing standards where possible. It is also RECOMMENDED that implementations publish the profile(s) 3922 that they support.

# 3923 **5.3.2 Profile Publication**

3924 The SDD TC publishes the starter profile and MAY publish any other profiles created by the SDD TC.

- 3925 Profiles created by the SDD TC SHALL be made available by the SDD TC.
- 3926 Profiles created by others MAY be published and made available by those parties and/or submitted to the
- 3927 SDD TC for consideration for publication by the SDD TC, according to the OASIS policies and
- 3928 procedures, including intellectual property rights. The SDD TC MAY publish and make available the new 3929 profiles through majority vote of the TC.

# 3930 **5.3.3 Profile Applicability**

Profiles are applicable to particular usage models, domains and/or user communities. An implementation
 MAY claim conformance to one or more particular profiles.

# 3933 **5.4 Compatibility Statements**

- Versions of the specification use the version value defined in the *schemaVersion* attribute described in
   section 3.2. New versions of the specification MAY update the conformance level contents. Changes
   made to the specification for each new version are listed in Appendix [B].
- 3937 Profiles also use the *schemaVersion* attribute described in section 3.2. New versions of profiles MAY3938 update the profile contents.
- 3939 Minor version updates of the schema, specification and profiles SHALL be backward-compatible with 3940 proceeding major versions (for example, all "1.x" versions are backward-compatible with version "1.0").
- 3941 Moreover, minor version updates of the schema, specification and profiles SHALL be backward-
- compatible with proceeding minor versions of the same major version (for example, version "1.4" is
  backward-compatible with versions "1.3", "1.2", "1.1" and "1.0").
- 3944 Major version updates of the schema, specification and profiles are NOT REQUIRED to be backward-
- 3945 compatible with previous versions and MAY NOT be backward-compatible with previous versions. For
- example, if non-backward-compatible changes occur in version "1.x", the new version is "2.0". Although
   new major versions MAY have substantial backward compatibility, backward compatibility is not
- 3948 guaranteed for all aspects of the schema across major versions.

# 3949 5.5 Conformance Clause

# 3950 **5.5.1 Conformance for Users of This Specification**

- An SDD conforms to this specification if it conforms to the SDD schema and follows the syntax and
   semantics defined in the normative portions of this specification. An SDD MAY conform to conformance
   levels CL1 or CL2.
- An implementation conforms to this specification if it conforms to, at minimum, conformance level CL1 of the SDD schema; supports at least one SDD profile; and follows the syntax and semantics defined in the normative portions of this specification. An implementation MAY support conformance levels CL1 or CL2 and MAY support additional SDD profiles.

# 3958 **5.5.2 Conformance for This Specification Itself**

- 3959 This section is the conformance claim for how this document conforms to **[CONFORM]**. The conformance 3960 issues in section 8 of **[CONFORM]** apply to this document as follows:
- This document is applicable to SDDs as defined in this specification. To claim conformance to this document, all the requirements in section 5.5.1 SHALL be met.
- This document MAY be implemented in its entirety or in defined conformance levels CL1 and CL2.
   This document does not define profiles, but the SDD TC MAY define profiles that MAY be implemented.
- This document allows extensions. Each implementation SHALL fully support all required functionality of the specification exactly as specified. The use of extensions SHALL NOT contradict nor cause the non-conformance of functionality defined in the specification.
  - 4. This document contains no discretionary items.

3969

3970 5. This document's normative language is English. Translation into other languages is permitted.

3971

# **A. Schema and Non-Normative Resource File List**

3973 3974	The SDD schema is implemented by multiple schema files. Types defined in each file are identified by a specific namespace prefix, as indicated in the following list:
3975	<ul> <li>sdd-common-2.0.xsd (prefix: sdd-common)</li> </ul>
3976 3977 3978 3979	Contains definitions of common types used in the SDD specification, including identity and fix-identity types, UUID and version types, and the display text type. The following namespace document describes this namespace and contains a directory of links to related resources, including the CL1 and Full Schema files:
3980	http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/sdd/v2.0/sdd-common-2.0.html
3981	sdd-deploymentDescriptor-2.0.xsd (prefix: sdd-dd)
3982 3983 3984	Contains the deployment descriptor specification, including various content types. The following namespace document describes this namespace and contains a directory of links to related resources, including the CL1 and Full Schema files:
3985	http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/sdd/v2.0/sdd-deploymentdescriptor-2.0.html
3986	<ul> <li>sdd-packageDescriptor-2.0.xsd (prefix: sdd-pd)</li> </ul>
3987 3988 3989	Contains the package descriptor specification, including types related to packages and files. The following namespace document describes this namespace and contains a directory of links to related resources, including the CL1 and Full Schema files:
3990	http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/sdd/v2.0/sdd-packagedescriptor-2.0.html
3991	
3992 3993 3994	Additional non-normative files referenced by the SDD specification include example SDDs, the SDD Primer, and the SDD Starter Profile. These documents are provided as supplemental resources for SDD authors.
3995	Example SDDs showing the use of the schema can be found at the following address:
3996	http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/sdd/v2.0/sdd-examples-v2.0.zip
3997	The SDD Primer can be found at:
3998	http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/sdd/v2.0/sdd-primer-v2.0.doc
3999	The SDD Starter Profile can be found at:
4000	http://docs.oasis-open.org/sdd/sdd/v2.0/sdd-starter-profile-v2.0.zip
4001 4002	HTML and PDF versions of the SDD Primer and the SDD Starter Profile are also available in the locations provided above.
4003	

# **B. Changes from previous versions**

The following are the changes between the "Solution Deployment Descriptor v1.0" specification and the 3006 "Solution Deployment Descriptor v2.0" specification.

4007 Items highlighted below in **bold** are elements that are deprecated starting with the "Solution Deployment
4008 Descriptor v2.0" specification. These elements were also changed in the SDD v2.0 schemas to a new
4009 type in order to remain compatible. However, in order to reduce confusion and to emphasize that these
4010 elements should no longer be used, the referenced sections in the SDD v2.0 specification for these
4011 elements were not updated to reflect the new type; instead, they have been updated to indicate that the
4012 element is deprecated. The text is unchanged from the SDD v1.0 specification.

- 4013 Changed version number from 1.0 to 2.0.
- 4014 Refreshed all images and updated diagram conventions in section [1.11].
- 4015 Added new Non-Normative Reference to SDD Examples in section [1.13].
- 4016 Added clarification to *Requirements* [2.7].
- 4017 Removed descriptorLanguageBundle attribute from DescriptorInfoGroup [3.2] and
   4018 DeploymentDescriptor [4.1]; moved descriptorLanguageBundle attribute to PackageDescriptor [3.1].
- 4019 Updated version number in *schemaVersion* attribute in *DescriptorInfoGroup* [3.2].
- 4020 Added clarification to *ContentType* [3.12].
- 4021 Added clarification to *pathname* attribute in *ContentType* [3.12].
- 4022 Added clarification to the *descriptorLanguageBundle* enumeration value within the purpose attribute
   4023 in *ContentType* [3.12].
- 4024 Added clarification to the *ResourceType* [4.2.2].
- 4025 Added *implementedBy* attribute to *ResourceType* [4.2.2].
- 4026 Deprecated Name element from ResourceType [4.2.2].
- 4027 Added clarification to the *Property* element in *ResourceType* [4.2.2].
- 4028 Changed Value element to ElementValueType [4.6.2] in PropertyType [4.2.3].
- 4029 Changed Value element to ElementValueType [4.6.2] in ResultingPropertyType [4.2.4].
- 4030 Added clarification/example to targetResourceRef attribute in InstallableUnitType [4.3.1].
- 4031 Added clarification to OperationType [4.3.7].
- Changed name and value attributes to ElementValueType [4.6.2] and renamed to Name and Value in ArgumentType [4.3.9]. Added clarification to both specific to use of ElementValueType [4.6.2].
- 4034 Added clarification to *Pattern* element in *SubstitutionType* [4.3.13].
- Changed Value element to ElementValueType [4.6.2] in SubstitutionType [4.3.13] and added clarification to Value specific to the use of ElementValueType [4.6.2].
- 4037 Added clarification to the *Constraints* [4.4] introduction.
- Changed Minimum, Maximum, MinimumRecommended, and MaximumRecommended elements to
   *ElementValueType* [4.6.2] in *CapacityValueType* [4.4.2] and added clarification to all specific to use of
   *ElementValueType* [4.6.2].
- 4041 Changed ConsumptionConstraintValueType [4.4.4] to extend ElementValueType [4.6.2].
- 4042 Changed Value element to ElementValueType [4.6.2] in PropertyConstraintType [4.4.5].
- 4043 Added clarification to the Value element in PropertyConstraintType [4.4.5].
- 4044 Changed Value element to ElementValueType [4.6.2] in PropertyValueListType [4.4.6].
- 4045 Added clarification to the Value element in Property ValueListType [4.4.6].
- 4046 Added clarification to the VersionConstraintType [4.4.7].

- 4047 Added clarification to the Supported and Certified elements in VersionConstraintType [4.4.7].
- 4048 Added new AuthorizationConstraintType [4.4.14].
- 4049 Added clarification and example to ConditionalResouceConstraintType [4.5.3].
- 4050 Deprecated Name element from ConditionalResourceConstraintType [4.5.3].
- 4051 Added AuthorizationConstraint element to ConditionalResourceConstraintType [4.5.3].
- 4052 Added clarification to testValue attribute in ConditionalResourceConstraintType [4.5.3].
- 4053 Changed ConditionalPropertyConstraintType [4.5.3] to reference ElementValueType [4.6.2] instead of
   4054 VariableExpressionType [4.6.1].
- 4055 Improved description in *Variables* [4.6] introduction.
- Added clarification to VariableExpressionType [4.6.1] and moved general variable content to
   Variables [4.6] introduction section.
- 4058 Added new ElementValueType [4.6.2].
- 4059 Added new StringPatternType [4.6.3].
- 4060 Added ComplexParameter and ArrayParameter elements to ParametersType [4.6.6].
- Changed defaultValue attribute to ElementValueType [4.6.2] and renamed to DefaultValue in
   BaseParameterType [4.6.6]. Added clarification to DefaultValue specific to ElementValueType [4.6.2].
- 4063 Added clarification to *id* and *required* attributes in *BaseParameterType* [4.6.6].
- Changed LowerBound and UpperBound elements to ElementValueType [4.6.2] in BoundaryType
   [4.6.9] and added clarification to both specific to ElementValueType [4.6.2].
- 4066 Added clarification to BooleanParameterType [4.6.12] specific to ElementValueType [4.6.2].
- 4067 Added new ComplexParameterType [4.6.13.2].
- 4068 Added new ArrayParameterType [4.6.15].
- 4069 Added new IntegerDataType [4.6.16].
- 4070 Added new StringDataType [4.6.17].
- 4071 Added clarification to the ResourcePropertyType [4.6.18].
- 4072 Added clarification to the *Requirements* [4.7] introduction.
- 4073 Added clarification to the *id* attribute in *RequirementType* [4.7.2].
- 4074 Added AuthorizationConstraint element to ResourceConstraintGroup [4.7.4].
- 4075 Deprecated Name element from RequirementResourceConstraintType [4.7.5].
- 4076 Added AuthorizationConstraint element to RequirementResourceConstraintType [4.7.5].
- 4077 Added clarification to testValue attribute in RequirementResourceConstraintType [4.7.5].
- 4078 Deprecated Name element from RequiredBaseConstraintType [4.7.8].
- 4079 Added clarification to *testValue* attribute in *RequiredBaseConstraintType* [4.7.9].
- 4080 Deprecated Name element from ResultingResourceType. [4.8.1]
- 4081 Added clarification to *Property* element in *ResultingResourceType* [4.8.1].
- 4082 Deprecated Name element from ResultingChangeType [4.8.2].
- 4083 Added clarification to *Property* element in *ResultingChangeType* [4.8.2].
- 4084 Added clarification to *ResultingResourceMap* element in *ReferencedPackageType* [4.10.1].
- 4085 Added clarification to the *ResourceMapType* [4.10.2].
- 4086 Deprecated Name element from ResultingResourceMapType [4.10.3].
- 4087 Added clarifications to *ResultingResourceMapType* [4.10.3] and to the *Version*, *FixName*, and
   4088 *Property* elements in *ResultingResourceMapType* [4.10.3].
- 4089 Deprecated Name element from ResultingChangeMapType [4.10.4].

- Added clarifications to *ResultingChangeMapType* [4.10.4] and to the *Property* element in
   *ResultingChangeMapType* [4.10.4].
- Changed selections attribute to ElementValueType [4.6.2] and renamed to Selections in ContentSelectionFeatureType [4.12.9]. Added clarification to Selections specific to ElementValueType [4.6.2].
- 4095 Added clarification to *translationKey* attribute in *DisplayTextType* [4.14.3].
- 4096 Incorporated v1.0 Errata into Appendix [A].
- 4097 Added new Appendix [B] to list summary of changes to the specification from version to version.

4098

# 4099 **C. Acknowledgements**

- 4100 The following individuals have participated in the creation of this specification and are gratefully
- 4101 acknowledged:

#### 4102 Participants: 4103 Dr. Ho

Dr. Howard Abrams, CA Mr. Joshua Allen, Macrovision Corporation 4104 4105 Mr. Rich Aguino, Macrovision Corporation 4106 Mr. Lazar Borissov, SAP AG 4107 Ms. Debra Danielson, CA 4108 Mr. Robert DeMason, SAS Institute, Inc. 4109 Mr. Robert Dickau, Macrovision Corporation Mr. Quenio dos Santos, Macrovision Corporation 4110 Mrs. Christine Draper, IBM 4111 Mr. Adrian Dunston, SAS Institute, Inc. 4112 4113 Mr. James Falkner, Sun Microsystems 4114 Mr. Keisuke Fukui, Fujitsu Limited Mr. Randy George, IBM 4115 Mr. Nico Groh, SAP AG 4116 4117 Mr. Jeff Hamm, SAS Institute, Inc. 4118 Mr. Frank Heine, SAP AG 4119 Ms. Merri Jensen, SAS Institute, Inc. 4120 Dr. Hiro Kishimoto, Fujitsu Limited Mr. Thomas Klink, SAP AG 4121 4122 Mr. Jason Losh, SAS Institute, Inc. 4123 Ms. Julia McCarthy, IBM Mr. Mark McCraw, SAS Institute, Inc. 4124 Mr. Art Middlekauff, Macrovision Corporation 4125 4126 Mr. Brent Miller, IBM 4127 Mr. Ed Overton, SAS Institute, Inc. 4128 Mr. Chris Robsahm, SAP AG Dr. David Snelling, Fujitsu Limited 4129 4130 Mr. Thomas Studwell, Dell 4131 Dr. Weijia (John) Zhang, Dell Mr. Kirk Wilson, CA 4132

4133